

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

Form 20-F

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(D) OF
THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018

Commission file number 001-04192

MFC BANCORP LTD.

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

Cayman Islands

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong SAR, China
(Address of office)

Michael J. Smith
Unit 803, Dina House
Ruttonjee Centre
11 Duddell Street
Hong Kong SAR, China
Telephone: 1 (844) 331-3343
Facsimile: +(852) 2840-1260

with a copy to:

H.S. Sangra
Sangra Moller LLP
1000 Cathedral Place, 925 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6C 3L2
Facsimile: +1 604-669-8803

(Name, Telephone, E-mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Shares	New York Stock Exchange

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None.

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act: None.

Indicate the number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer's classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report.

There were 12,534,801 Common Shares of US\$0.001 par value each issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2018.

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. YES NO

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act. YES NO

Note – Checking the box above will not relieve any registrant required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act from their obligations under those Sections.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. YES NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). YES NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or an emerging growth company. See definition of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer Non-accelerated filer
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards† provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

†The term "new or revised financial accounting standard" refers to any update issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board to its Accounting Standards Codification after April 5, 2012.

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing.

U.S. GAAP International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board Other

If "Other" has been checked in response to the previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow. Item 17 Item 18

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES NO

MFC BANCORP LTD.

Dear Fellow Shareholders,

Today, we announced our 2018 financial results and scheduled a meeting of shareholders where we are seeking approval to (i) change our name to better reflect our business going forward; and (ii) complete a consolidation and subsequent forward split of our shares to further reduce administrative expenses.

In late 2018, the operator of the mine underlying our iron ore interest in Canada announced that it had completed financing to re-start mining operations and that it plans to re-start the Scully mine in the summer of 2019. This development triggered a review of the carrying value of this asset, which resulted in the recognition of an after-tax non-cash gain of \$137.4 million.

As a result, we returned to profitability for the first time since 2013 and reported net income of \$112.3 million, or \$8.96 per share, which increased our shareholders' equity to \$386.4 million, or \$30.82 per share.

Going forward, to better reflect our balance sheet and business, we plan to change our name to "Scully Limited". We also intend to complete a consolidation and subsequent forward split of our shares to reduce the administrative burden associated with small odd-lot shareholders.

Name Change / Consolidation and Split

A meeting of our shareholders is scheduled to be held on May 31, 2019. At the meeting, shareholders will be asked to approve the change of our name to "Scully Limited", which we believe better reflects our business strategy and profile going forward.

In addition, At the meeting, shareholders will also consider the approval of a consolidation of our common shares on a 25 for 1 basis, referred to as the "Consolidation", and subsequent forward split of such shares on a 1 for 25 basis, referred to collectively as the "Consolidation / Split". No fractional shares will be issued as a result of the Consolidation to registered shareholders (i.e. shareholders who hold their shares in registered form and not beneficially through a broker or other intermediary), with such fractional shares to be combined and sold by our transfer agent and the proceeds thereof to be paid to registered holders of fractional shares on a pro rata basis.

Subject to receipt of requisite shareholder approval, we currently expect the name change and Consolidation/Split to be completed on or about June 3, 2019.

Our Goal Moving Forward

It is our goal and initiative to structure the group in a way that assists in substantially eliminating the discount between the market price of our common shares and our stated net book value per share as of December 31, 2018. We are in the process of defining and finalizing our plans and expect to announce details of such strategy in the near future.

Stakeholder Communications

Management welcomes any questions you may have and looks forward to discussing our operations, results and plans with stakeholders. Further:

- stakeholders are encouraged to read our entire annual report on Form 20-F, including our audited financial statements and management's discussion and analysis, for the year ended December 31, 2018, which is included herein, for a greater understanding of our business and operations; and
- direct any questions regarding the information in this report to our North American toll free line: 1 (844) 331 3343 or email info@mfcbankcorp.com to book a conference call with our senior management.

Respectfully Submitted,



Michael J. Smith
Chairman, President and Chief Executive Officer

MFC BANCORP LTD.

Form 20-F

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTORY MATTERS	1
PART I.	1
FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	1
CURRENCY INFORMATION	1
NOTE ON FINANCIAL AND OTHER INFORMATION	2
ITEM 1: IDENTITY OF DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND ADVISERS	2
ITEM 2: OFFER STATISTICS AND EXPECTED TIMETABLE	2
ITEM 3: KEY INFORMATION	3
A. Selected Financial Data	3
B. Capitalization and Indebtedness	3
C. Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds	3
D. Risk Factors	3
ITEM 4: INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY	12
A. History and Development of the Company	12
B. Business Overview	12
C. Organizational Structure	16
D. Property, Plants and Equipment	16
ITEM 4A: UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS	17
ITEM 5: OPERATING AND FINANCIAL REVIEW AND PROSPECTS	17
General	17
Results of Operations	18
Liquidity and Capital Resources	22
Application of Critical Accounting Policies	27
New Standards and Interpretations Adopted and Not Yet Adopted	31
Trend Information	32
Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements	32
Safe Harbor	32
ITEM 6: DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYEES	33
A. Directors and Senior Management	33
B. Compensation	34
C. Board Practices	36
D. Employees	37
E. Share Ownership	37
ITEM 7: MAJOR SHAREHOLDERS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS	38
A. Major Shareholders	38
B. Related Party Transactions	38
C. Interests of Experts and Counsel	39
ITEM 8: FINANCIAL INFORMATION	39
A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information	39
B. Significant Changes	39

ITEM 9: THE OFFER AND LISTING	40
A. Offer and Listing Details	40
B. Plan of Distribution	40
C. Markets	40
D. Selling Shareholders	40
E. Dilution	40
F. Expenses of the Issue	40
ITEM 10: ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	40
A. Share Capital	40
B. Memorandum and Articles of Association	40
C. Material Contracts	42
D. Exchange Controls	42
E. Taxation.	43
F. Dividends and Paying Agents	46
G. Statement by Experts.	46
H. Documents on Display	46
I. Subsidiary Information.	46
ITEM 11: QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK .	46
ITEM 12: DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES OTHER THAN EQUITY SECURITIES	47
PART II	47
ITEM 13: DEFAULTS, DIVIDEND ARREARAGES AND DELINQUENCIES	47
ITEM 14: MATERIAL MODIFICATIONS TO RIGHTS OF SECURITY HOLDERS AND USE OF PROCEEDS	47
ITEM 15: CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES	47
ITEM 16: [RESERVED].	48
ITEM 16A: AUDIT COMMITTEE FINANCIAL EXPERT	48
ITEM 16B: CODE OF ETHICS	48
ITEM 16C: PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES	48
ITEM 16D: EXEMPTIONS FROM THE LISTING STANDARDS FOR AUDIT COMMITTEES	49
ITEM 16E: PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES BY THE ISSUER AND AFFILIATED PURCHASERS	49
ITEM 16F: CHANGE IN REGISTRANT’S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT	49
ITEM 16G: CORPORATE GOVERNANCE.	50
ITEM 16H: MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURE.	50
ITEM 17: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	50
ITEM 18: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	51
ITEM 19: EXHIBITS	117

INTRODUCTORY MATTERS

All references in this document to “\$” and “dollars” are to Canadian dollars, all references to “US\$” are to United States dollars and all references to “Euro” or “€” are to the European Union Euro, unless otherwise indicated.

Unless the context otherwise indicates, references herein to “we”, “us”, “our”, the “Company” are to MFC Bancorp Ltd. and its consolidated subsidiaries.

PART I

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This document contains certain forward-looking information and statements, including statements relating to matters that are not historical facts and statements of our beliefs, intentions and expectations about developments, results and events which will or may occur in the future, including “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of the “safe harbor” provisions of the United States *Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995*, as amended, collectively referred to as “forward-looking statements”. Forward-looking statements are typically identified by words such as “anticipate”, “could”, “should”, “expect”, “may”, “intend”, “will”, “plan”, “estimate”, “believe” and similar expressions suggesting future outcomes or statements or their negative or other comparable words. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements with respect to: our markets; economic conditions; performance; and business prospects. All such forward-looking statements are based on certain assumptions and analyses made by us in light of our experience and perception of historical trends, current conditions and expected future developments, as well as other factors we believe are appropriate in the circumstances. These forward-looking statements are, however, subject to known and unknown risks and uncertainties and other factors. As a result, actual results, performance or achievements could differ materially from those expressed in, or implied by, these forward-looking statements and, accordingly, no assurance can be given that any of the events anticipated by the forward-looking statements will transpire or occur, or if any of them do so, what benefits will be derived therefrom. These risks, uncertainties and other factors include, among others, those set forth under the section entitled “*Item 3: Key Information — D. Risk Factors*”.

Although we believe that the expectations reflected in such forward-looking information and statements are reasonable, we can give no assurance that such expectations will prove to be accurate. Accordingly, readers should not place undue reliance upon any of the forward-looking information and statements set out in this document. The forward-looking information and statements are made as of the date of this document and we assume no obligation to update or revise them except as required pursuant to applicable securities laws.

CURRENCY INFORMATION

The following table sets forth the exchange rates for the translation of United States dollars and Euros to Canadian dollars in effect at the end of each of the five most recent financial years, the average exchange rates during these periods and the range of high and low exchange rates for these periods. The exchange rates are based on the noon rate of exchange for dates through April 28, 2017, and based on the average daily rate of exchange for dates after April 28, 2017, as reported by the Bank of Canada.

	Years Ended December 31,				
	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
			(\$/US\$)		
End of period	1.3642	1.2545	1.3427	1.3840	1.1601
High for period	1.2288	1.2128	1.2544	1.1728	1.0614
Low for period	1.3642	1.3743	1.4589	1.3990	1.1643
Average for period	1.2957	1.2986	1.3248	1.2787	1.1045
			(\$/€)		
End of period	1.5613	1.5052	1.4169	1.5029	1.4038
High for period	1.4791	1.3848	1.3875	1.3111	1.3927
Low for period	1.5330	1.5330	1.5928	1.5298	1.5549
Average for period	1.5302	1.4651	1.4660	1.4182	1.4671

The following table sets forth the range of high and low exchange rates for the translation of United States dollars and Euros to Canadian dollars for each of the previous six months. The exchange rates are based on the average daily rate of exchange, as reported by the Bank of Canada.

Month	High	Low
	(\$/US\$)	
March 2019	1.3260	1.3438
February 2019	1.3095	1.3298
January 2019	1.3144	1.3600
December 2018	1.3191	1.3642
November 2018	1.3088	1.3302
October 2018	1.2803	1.3642
	(\$/€)	
March 2019	1.5002	1.5194
February 2019	1.4938	1.5079
January 2019	1.5066	1.5441
December 2018	1.4968	1.5613
November 2018	1.4926	1.5124
October 2018	1.4678	1.5073

On April 26, 2019, the average daily rate of exchange for the translation of United States dollars and Euros to Canadian dollars were US\$1.00 = \$1.3460 and €1.00 = \$1.5015, respectively.

NOTE ON FINANCIAL AND OTHER INFORMATION

Unless otherwise stated, all financial information presented herein has been prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, referred to as “IFRS” and the “IASB”, respectively, which may not be comparable to financial data prepared by many U.S. companies.

Due to rounding, numbers presented throughout this document may not add up precisely to the totals we provide and percentages may not precisely reflect the absolute figures.

References herein to the number of our Common Shares or per Common Share amounts have been restated, where necessary, to reflect a share consolidation and split in 2017. See Note 1 to our audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 for further information.

All websites referred to herein are inactive textual references only, meaning that the information contained on such websites is not incorporated by reference herein and you should not consider information contained on such websites as part of this document unless expressly specified.

ITEM 1: IDENTITY OF DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND ADVISERS

Not applicable.

ITEM 2: OFFER STATISTICS AND EXPECTED TIMETABLE

Not applicable.

ITEM 3: KEY INFORMATION

A. Selected Financial Data

The following table summarizes selected consolidated financial data prepared in accordance with IFRS for the five fiscal years ended December 31, 2018. Effective December 31, 2015, we changed our reporting currency to the Canadian dollar. Our consolidated financial statements as at and for the year ended December 31, 2014 were reported using the United States dollar. With the change in reporting currency, comparative financial information for years prior to 2015 has been recast from United States dollars to Canadian dollars to reflect our consolidated financial statements as if they had been historically reported in Canadian dollars, consistent with IAS 21, *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates*, referred to as “IAS 21”. The information in the table was extracted from our consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this or previously filed annual reports on Form 20-F, and should be read in conjunction with such financial statements and with the information appearing under the heading “*Item 5: Operating and Financial Review and Prospects*”.

Selected Financial Data
(Stated in Canadian dollars in accordance with IFRS)
(In thousands, other than per share amounts)

	2018	2017	2016	2015*	2014*
Revenue	\$ 139,751	\$ 274,035	\$ 1,131,657	\$ 1,629,100	\$ 1,405,330
Income (loss) from continuing operations	112,211	(47,065)	(23,720)	(244,602)	19,198
Net income (loss) from continuing operations per share					
Basic	8.96	(3.75)	(2.01)	(19.37)	1.52
Diluted	8.96	(3.75)	(2.01)	(19.37)	1.52
Net loss from discontinued operations	—	—	—	(241,402)	(18,522)
Loss per share from discontinued operations:					
Basic	—	—	—	(19.12)	(1.45)
Diluted	—	—	—	(19.12)	(1.45)
Net income (loss) for the year	112,211	(47,065)	(23,720)	(486,004)	676
Net income (loss) attributable to owners of the parent company	112,276	(47,855)	(25,361)	(487,630)	(682)
Net income (loss) per share:					
Basic	8.96	(3.81)	(2.01)	(38.61)	(0.05)
Diluted	8.96	(3.81)	(2.01)	(38.61)	(0.05)
Total assets	506,913	396,947	650,338	977,351	1,692,219
Net assets	394,406	279,949	329,430	369,200	778,933
Long-term debt, less current portion	—	—	80,564	174,333	297,157
Loan payable, long-term	3,981	—	—	—	—
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780	327,520	367,192	777,717
Capital stock, net of treasury stock	309,505	309,505	358,831	358,831	358,570
Weighted average number of common stock outstanding, diluted	12,535	12,544	12,628	12,628	12,591
Cash dividends paid to shareholders	—	—	—	4,388	12,486

* Statement of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 has been restated to retrospectively reflect the share consolidation and subsequent share split, to be consistent with the presentation in the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere herein.

B. Capitalization and Indebtedness

Not applicable.

C. Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds

Not applicable.

D. Risk Factors

An investment in our Common Shares involves a number of risks. You should carefully consider the following risks and uncertainties in addition to other information in this annual report on Form 20-F in

evaluating our company and our business before making any investment decisions. Our business, operating and financial condition could be harmed due to any of the following risks.

Risk Factors Relating to Our Business

Our financial results may fluctuate substantially from period to period.

We expect our business to experience significant periodic variations in its revenue and results of operations in the future. These variations may be attributed in part to the fact that our merchant banking revenue is often earned upon the successful completion of a transaction, the timing of which is uncertain and beyond our control. In many cases, we may receive little or no payment for engagements that do not result in the successful completion of a transaction. Additionally, we seek to acquire undervalued assets where we can use our experience and management to realize upon the value. Often, we will hold or build upon these assets over time and we cannot predict the timing of when these assets' values may be realized. As a result, we are unlikely to achieve steady and predictable earnings, which could in turn adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations.

A weakening of the global economy, including capital and credit markets, could adversely affect our business and financial results and have a material adverse effect on our liquidity and capital resources.

Our business, by its nature, does not produce predictable earnings and it may be materially affected by conditions in the global financial markets and economic conditions generally. As demand for our products and merchant banking services has historically been determined by general global macro-economic activities, demand and prices for our products and services have historically decreased substantially during economic slowdowns. A significant economic downturn may affect our sales and profitability. Further, our suppliers and customers may also be adversely affected by an economic downturn. Depending on their severity and duration, the effects and consequences of a global economic downturn could have a material adverse effect on our liquidity and capital resources, including our ability to raise capital, if needed, and otherwise negatively impact our business and financial results.

A weakening of global economic conditions would likely aggravate the adverse effects of difficult economic and market conditions on us and on others in the merchant banking industry. In particular, we may face, among others, the following risks related to any future economic downturn: increased regulation of our banking operations; compliance with such regulation may increase the costs of our banking operations, may affect the pricing of our products and services and limit our ability to pursue business opportunities; reduced demand for our products and services; inability of our customers to comply fully or in a timely manner with their existing obligations; and the degree of uncertainty concerning economic conditions may adversely affect the accuracy of our estimates, which, in turn, impact the reliability of the process and the sufficiency of our credit loss allowances.

Further, any disruption or volatility in the global financial markets could have a material adverse effect on us, including our ability to access capital and liquidity on financial terms acceptable to us, if at all. Market deterioration and weakness can result in a material decline in the number and size of the transactions that we execute for our own account or for our clients and to a corresponding decline in our revenue. Any market weakness can further result in losses to the extent that we hold assets in such market. If all or some of the foregoing risks were to materialize, this could have a material adverse effect on us.

Our business is highly competitive.

All aspects of our business are highly competitive and we expect them to remain so.

Our competitors include merchant and investment banks, brokerage firms, commercial banks, private equity firms, hedge funds, financial advisory firms and natural resource and mineral royalty companies. Many of our competitors have substantially greater capital and resources, including access to supply, than we do. We believe that the principal factors affecting competition in our business include transaction execution, our products and services, client relationships, reputation, innovations, credit worthiness and price.

The scale of our competitors has increased in recent years as a result of substantial consolidation. These firms have the ability to offer a wider range of products than we do, which may enhance their competitive position.

If we are unable to compete effectively with our competitors, our business and results of operations will be adversely affected.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, other than a metal customer that accounted for 16% of our revenue, none of our customers accounted for more than 10% of our revenue. The loss of key customers, due to competitive conditions or otherwise, may adversely affect our results of operations.

If the fair values of our long-lived assets or their recoverable amounts fall below our carrying values, we would be required to record non-cash impairment losses that could have a material impact on our results of operations.

We review the carrying value of long-lived assets for impairment when events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of the assets may not be recoverable. Should the markets for our products deteriorate, should we decide to invest capital differently or should other cash flow assumptions change, it is possible that we will be required to record non-cash impairment losses in the future that could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations.

Our earnings and, therefore, our profitability may be affected by price volatility in our various products.

The majority of our revenue from our merchant banking business in 2018 was derived from the sale of products, which include metals, hydrocarbons and other materials. As a result, our earnings are directly related to the prices of these underlying products. There are many factors influencing the price of these products, including: expectations for inflation; global and regional demand and production; political and economic conditions; and production costs in major producing regions. These factors are beyond our control and are impossible for us to predict. Changes in the prices of our products may adversely affect our operating results.

We may face a lack of suitable acquisition, merger or other proprietary investment candidates, which may limit our growth.

In order to grow our business, we may seek to acquire, merge with or invest in new companies or opportunities. Our failure to make acquisitions or investments may limit our growth. In pursuing acquisition and investment opportunities, we face competition from other companies having similar growth and investment strategies, many of which may have substantially greater resources than us. Competition for these acquisitions or investment targets could result in increased acquisition or investment prices, higher risks and a diminished pool of businesses, services or products available for acquisition or investment.

Our activities are subject to counterparty risks associated with the performance of obligations by our counterparties.

Our business is subject to commercial risks, which include counterparty risk, such as failure of performance by our counterparties. We seek to reduce the risk of non-performance by requiring credit support from creditworthy financial institutions where appropriate. We also attempt to reduce the risk of non-payment by customers or other counterparties by imposing limits on open accounts extended to creditworthy customers and imposing credit support requirements for other customers. Nevertheless, we are exposed to the risk that parties owing us or our clients and other financial intermediaries may default on their obligations to us due to bankruptcy, lack of liquidity, operational failure or other reasons. These counterparty obligations may arise, for example, from placing deposits, the extension of credit or guarantees in trading and investment activities and participation in payment, securities and supply chain transactions on our behalf and as an agent on behalf of our clients. If any such customers or counterparties default on their obligations, our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flow could be adversely affected.

In addition, we evaluate the credit risk in respect of accounts receivable and other amounts owed to us by counterparties, including loss allowances. We may recognize losses on such amounts where, based on such evaluations, we determine that the related credit risk has increased significantly. Furthermore, while we take steps to mitigate such credit risks, our actual losses on such balances may differ from our assessments and currently anticipated loss allowances and, as a result we may recognize impairments in the future.

We are subject to transaction risks that may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flow.

We manage transaction risks through allocating and monitoring our capital investments in circumstances where the risk to our capital is minimal, carefully screening clients and transactions and engaging qualified personnel to manage transactions. Nevertheless, transaction risks can arise from our proprietary investing activities. These risks include market and credit risks associated with our operations. We intend to make

investments in highly unstructured situations and in companies undergoing severe financial distress and such investments often involve severe time constraints. These investments may expose us to significant transaction risks. An unsuccessful investment may result in the total loss of such investment and may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flow.

Our risk management strategies may leave us exposed to unidentified or unanticipated risks that could impact our risk management strategies in the future and could negatively affect our results of operations and financial condition.

We use a variety of instruments and strategies to manage exposure to various types of risks. For example, we may use derivative foreign exchange contracts to manage our exposure and our clients' exposure to foreign currency exchange rate risks. If any of the variety of instruments and strategies we utilize to manage our exposure to various types of risk are not effective, we may incur losses. Many of our strategies are based on historical trading patterns and correlations. However, these strategies may not be fully effective in mitigating our risk exposure in all market environments or against all types of risk. Unexpected market developments may affect our risk management strategies and unanticipated developments could impact our risk management strategies in the future.

Derivative transactions may expose us to unexpected risk and potential losses.

We, from time to time, enter into derivative transactions that require us to deliver to the counterparty an underlying security, loan or other obligation in order to receive payment. Such derivative transactions may expose us to unexpected market, credit and operational risks that could cause us to suffer unexpected losses. Severe declines in asset values, unanticipated credit events or unforeseen circumstances may create losses from risks not appropriately taken into account in the structuring and/or pricing of a derivative transaction.

The operations of our bank subsidiary are subject to regulation, which could adversely affect our business and operations.

The operations of MFC Merchant Bank Limited, referred to as the "Bank", are subject to a number of directives and regulations, which materially affect our businesses. The statutes, regulations and policies to which we are subject may be changed at any time. In addition, the interpretation and the application by regulators of the laws and regulations to which we are subject may also change from time to time. Extensive legislation affecting the financial services industry has recently been adopted in Europe that directly or indirectly affects our business and regulations are in the process of being implemented. The manner in which those laws and related regulations are applied to the operations of credit institutions is still evolving. Any legislative or regulatory actions and any required changes to our business operations resulting from such legislation and regulations could result in significant loss of revenue, limit our ability to pursue business opportunities in which we might otherwise consider engaging or provide certain products and services, affect the value of assets that we hold, require us to increase our prices and therefore reduce demand for our financial products, impose additional compliance and other costs on us or otherwise adversely affect our businesses. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that future changes in regulations or in their interpretation or application will not adversely affect us. Please see "Item 4: Information on the Company — Regulation" for further information.

Further, the operations of our Bank may involve transactions with counterparties in the financial services industry, including commercial banks, investment banks and other institutional clients. Defaults by, and even rumors or questions about the solvency of certain financial institutions and the financial services industry generally, have led to market-wide liquidity problems and could lead to losses or defaults by other institutions. We may enter into transactions that could expose us to significant credit risk in the event of default by one of our significant counterparties. A default by a significant financial counterparty, or liquidity problems in the financial services industry generally, could have a material adverse effect on us.

Any failure to remain in compliance with sanctions, anti-money laundering laws or other applicable regulations in the jurisdictions in which we operate could harm our reputation and/or cause us to become subject to fines, sanctions or legal enforcement, which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our business has adopted policies and procedures respecting compliance with sanctions and anti-money laundering laws and we have adopted various policies and procedures to ensure compliance with specific laws applicable to it, including internal controls and "know-your-customer" procedures aimed at preventing money laundering and terrorism financing; however, participation of multiple parties in any given

transaction can make the process of due diligence difficult. Further, because our Bank's activities can be more document-based than other banking activities, it is susceptible to documentary fraud, which can be linked to money laundering, terrorism financing, illicit activities and/or the circumvention of sanctions or other restrictions (such as export prohibitions, licensing requirements or other trade controls). While we are alert to high-risk transactions, we are also aware that efforts, such as forgery, double invoicing, partial shipments of goods and use of fictitious goods, may be used to evade applicable laws and regulations. If our policies and procedures are ineffective in preventing third parties from using our finance operations as a conduit for money laundering or terrorism financing without our knowledge, our reputation could suffer and/or we could become subject to fines, sanctions or legal action (including being added to any "blacklists" that would prohibit certain parties from engaging in transactions with us, including our banking subsidiary), which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, amendments to sanctions, anti-money laundering laws or other applicable laws or regulations in countries in which we operate could impose additional compliance burdens on our operations.

Fluctuations in interest rates and foreign currency exchange rates may affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Fluctuations in interest rates may affect the fair value of our financial instruments sensitive to interest rates. An increase or decrease in market interest rates may result in changes to the fair value of our fixed interest rate financial instrument liabilities, thereby resulting in a reduction in the fair value of our equity. Similarly, fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates may affect the fair value of our financial instruments sensitive to foreign currency exchange rates.

Some of our operations are subject to environmental laws and regulations that may increase the costs of doing business and may restrict such operations.

Some of our operations present environmental risks and hazards and are subject to environmental regulation pursuant to a variety of government laws and regulations. These regulations mandate, among other things, the maintenance of air and water quality standards and land reclamation. They also set forth limitations on the generation, transportation, storage and disposal of solid and hazardous waste. Compliance with such laws and regulations can require significant expenditures, and a breach may result in the imposition of fines and penalties, which may be material. Environmental legislation is evolving in a manner expected to result in stricter standards and enforcement, larger fines and liability and potentially increased capital expenditures and operating costs. Any breach of environmental legislation by the operator of properties underlying our interests or by us, as an owner or operator of a property, could have a material impact on the viability of the relevant property and impair the revenue derived from the owned property or applicable royalty or other interest, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition. Further, environmental hazards may exist on the properties on which we hold, or have previously held, interests, which are unknown to us at present and have been caused by previous or existing owners or operators of the properties.

Failure to comply with applicable laws, regulations or permitting requirements may result in enforcement actions thereunder, including orders issued by regulatory or judicial authorities causing operations to cease or be curtailed and may include corrective measures requiring capital expenditures, installation of additional equipment or remedial actions. Parties engaged in resource operations or in the exploration or development of resource properties may also be required to compensate those suffering loss or damage by reason of the mining activities and may be subject to civil or criminal fines or penalties imposed for violations of applicable laws or regulations.

We may not be fully insured against certain environmental risks, either because such insurance is not available or because of high premium costs. In particular, insurance against risks from environmental pollution occurring over time, as opposed to sudden and catastrophic damages, is not available on economically reasonable terms. Accordingly, our properties may be subject to liability due to hazards that cannot be insured against or that have not been insured against due to prohibitive premium costs or for other reasons.

Limitations on our access to capital could impair our liquidity and our ability to conduct our business.

Liquidity, or ready access to funds, is essential to companies engaged in our business. Failures of financial firms have often been attributable in large part to insufficient liquidity. Liquidity is of particular importance to our merchant banking business and perceived liquidity issues may affect our clients' and

counterparties' willingness to engage in transactions with us. Our liquidity could be impaired due to circumstances that we may be unable to control, such as a general market disruption or an operational problem that affects our clients, counterparties, our lenders or us. Further, our ability to sell assets may be impaired if other market participants are seeking to sell similar assets at the same time.

We may require new capital to grow our business and there are no assurances that capital will be available when needed, if at all. It is likely such additional capital will be raised through the issuance of additional equity, which would result in dilution to our shareholders. A failure to obtain such additional capital could delay our ability to pursue our business plans in the future and adversely affect our future operations.

We may substantially increase our debt in the future.

It may be necessary for us to obtain financing with banks or financial institutions to provide funds for working capital, capital purchases, potential acquisitions and business development. Interest costs associated with any debt financing may adversely affect our profitability. Further, the terms on which amounts may be borrowed — including standard financial covenants regarding the maintenance of financial ratios, the prohibition against engaging in major corporate transactions or reorganizations and the payment of dividends — may impose additional constraints on our business operations and our financial strength.

As a result of our global operations, we are exposed to political, economic, legal, operational and other risks that could adversely affect our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flow.

In conducting our business in major markets around the world, we are subject to political, economic, legal, operational and other risks that are inherent in operating in other countries. These risks range from difficulties in settling transactions in emerging markets to possible nationalization, expropriation, price controls and other restrictive governmental actions, and terrorism. We also face the risk that exchange controls or similar restrictions imposed by foreign governmental authorities may restrict our ability to convert local currency received or held by us in their countries into Canadian dollars, Euros or other hard currencies or to take those other currencies out of those countries. If any of these risks become a reality, our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flow could be negatively impacted.

We are exposed to litigation risks in our business that are often difficult to assess or quantify and we could incur significant legal expenses every year in defending against litigation.

We are exposed to legal risks in our business and the volume and amount of damages claimed in litigation against financial intermediaries are increasing. These risks include potential liability for advice we provide to participants in corporate transactions and disputes over the terms and conditions of complex trading arrangements. We also face the possibility that counterparties in complex or risky trading transactions will claim that we improperly failed to inform them of the risks involved or that they were not authorized or permitted to enter into such transactions with us and, accordingly, that their obligations to us are not enforceable. During a prolonged market downturn, we expect these types of claims to increase. We are also exposed to legal risks in our merchant banking and proprietary investing activities.

We seek to invest in undervalued businesses or assets often as a result of financial, legal, regulatory or other distress affecting them. Investing in distressed businesses and assets can involve us in complex legal issues relating to priorities, claims and other rights of stakeholders. These risks are often difficult to assess or quantify and their existence and magnitude often remains unknown for substantial periods of time. We may incur significant legal and other expenses in defending against litigation involved with any of these risks and may be required to pay substantial damages for settlements and/or adverse judgments. Substantial legal liability or significant regulatory action against us could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

We rely significantly on the skills and experience of our executives and the loss of any of these individuals may harm our business.

Our future success depends to a significant degree on the skills, experience and efforts of our executives and the loss of their services may compromise our ability to effectively conduct our business. We do not maintain “key person” insurance in relation to any of our employees.

The loss of any of our management personnel could negatively affect our business operations. From time to time, we will also need to identify and retain additional skilled management and specialized technical personnel to efficiently operate our business. The competition for such persons is intense. Recruiting and

retaining qualified personnel is critical to our success and there can be no assurance of our ability to attract and retain such personnel. If we are not successful in attracting and retaining qualified personnel, our ability to execute our business model and strategy could be affected, which could have a material adverse impact on our profitability, results of operations and financial condition.

We conduct business in countries with a history of corruption and transactions with foreign governments and doing so increases the risks associated with our international activities.

As we operate internationally, we are subject to the United States' *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act* and other laws that prohibit improper payments or offers of payments to foreign governments and their officials and political parties by the United States and other business entities that have securities registered in the United States for the purpose of obtaining or retaining business. We have operations and agreements with third parties in countries known to experience corruption. Further international expansion may involve more exposure to such practices. Our activities in these countries create the risk of unauthorized payments or offers of payments by our employees or consultants that could be in violation of various laws including the *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act*, even though these parties are not always subject to our control. It is our policy to implement safeguards to discourage these practices by our employees and consultants. However, our existing safeguards and any future improvements may prove to be less than effective and our employees or consultants may engage in conduct for which we might be held responsible. Violations of the *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act* may result in criminal or civil sanctions and we may be subject to other liabilities, which could negatively affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

The operation of the iron ore mine underlying our interest was closed in 2014. Its operation is generally determined by a third-party operator and we currently have no decision-making power as to how the property is operated. In addition, we have no or very limited access to technical or geological data respecting the mine, including as to mineralization or reserves. The operator's failure to perform or other operating decisions could have a material adverse effect on our revenue, results of operations and financial condition.

The operation of the iron ore mine underlying our interest was closed in 2014. A new operator acquired the former operator's interests in the second quarter of 2017. The operator generally has the power to determine the manner in which the property is operated. The interests of the operator and our interests may not always be aligned. Our inability to control the operations of the mine can adversely affect our profitability, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, we have no or very limited access to technical or geological data respecting the mine, including as to mineralization and reserves.

To the extent grantors of royalties and other interests do not abide by their contractual obligations, we may be forced to take legal action to enforce our contractual rights. Should any decision with respect to such action be determined adversely to us, such decision may have a material adverse effect on our profitability, results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, we have no or very limited access to technical or geological data relating to the mine and operations underlying our interest, including reserves data. Accordingly, we can provide no assurances as to the level of reserves at the mine. If the operator determines there are insufficient reserves to economically operate the mine, it may abandon its currently announced re-start or, thereafter, scale back or cease operations, which could have a material adverse effect on our profitability, results of operations and financial condition.

Our hydrocarbon and related operations are subject to inherent risks and hazards.

There are many operating risks and hazards inherent in our resource operations, including environmental hazards, industrial accidents, changes in the regulatory environment, impact of non-compliance with laws and regulations, potential damage to equipment or personal injury and fires, explosions, blowouts, spills or other accidents. Additionally, we could experience interruptions to, or the termination of, production, processing or transportation activities due to bad weather, natural disasters, delays in obtaining governmental approvals or consents, insufficient storage or transportation capacity or other geological or mechanical conditions. Any of these events that result in an interruption or suspension of operations would adversely affect our hydrocarbon operations.

In addition, certain of our undeveloped reserves are, or may in the future be, subject to third-party operating agreements, including farm-out and participation agreements. As a result, development activities conducted by such third-parties may not be entirely within our control.

Future environmental and reclamation obligations respecting our resource properties and interests may be material.

We have not established a separate reclamation fund for the purpose of funding estimated future environmental and reclamation obligations or liabilities. Any site reclamation or abandonment costs

incurred in the ordinary course in a specific period will be funded out of cash flow from operations. To the extent our hydrocarbon properties are not disposed of, we expect to incur site restoration costs over a prolonged period as wells reach the end of their economic life and may also be subject to reclamation and other environmental liabilities for past resource activities. There are significant uncertainties related to decommissioning obligations and the impact on the financial statements could be material. The eventual timing of and costs for these asset retirement and other environmental obligations or potential liabilities could differ from current estimates.

Strategic investments or acquisitions and joint ventures, or our entry into new business areas, may result in additional risks and uncertainties in our business.

We may make strategic investments and acquisitions or joint ventures and similar transactions in the future. When we make strategic investments or acquisitions or enter into joint ventures, we expect to face numerous risks and uncertainties in combining or integrating the relevant businesses and systems, including the need to combine accounting and data processing systems and management controls and to integrate relationships with customers and business partners. The costs of integrating acquired businesses (including restructuring charges associated with the acquisitions, as well as other related costs, such as accounting, legal and advisory fees) could significantly impact our operating results.

Although we perform due diligence on the businesses we purchase, in light of the circumstances of each transaction, an unavoidable level of risk remains regarding the actual condition of these businesses. We may not be able to ascertain the value or understand the potential liabilities of the acquired businesses and their operations until we assume operating control of these businesses.

Furthermore, any acquisitions of businesses or facilities could entail a number of risks, including, among others: problems with the effective integration of operations; inability to maintain key pre-acquisition business relationships; increased operating costs; exposure to substantial unanticipated liabilities; difficulties in realizing projected efficiencies, synergies and cost savings; the risks of entering markets in which we have limited or no prior experience; and the possibility that we may be unable to recruit additional managers with the necessary skills to supplement the management of the acquired businesses.

In addition, geographic and other expansions, acquisitions or joint ventures may require significant managerial attention, which may be diverted from our other operations. If we are unsuccessful in overcoming these risks, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially and adversely affected.

Tax audits or disputes, or changes in the tax laws applicable to us, could materially increase our tax payments.

We exercise significant judgment in calculating our provision for income taxes and other tax liabilities. Although we believe our tax estimates are reasonable, many factors may affect their accuracy. Applicable tax authorities may disagree with our tax treatment of certain material items potentially causing an increase in tax liabilities. Due to the size, complexity and nature of our operations, various tax matters and litigation are outstanding from time to time, including relating to our former affiliates. Currently, based upon information available to us, we do not believe any such matters would have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations. However, due to the inherent uncertainty, we cannot provide certainty as to their outcome. If our current assessments are materially incorrect or if we are unable to resolve any of these matters favorably, there may be a material adverse impact on our financial performance, cash flows or results of operations.

Furthermore, changes to existing laws may also increase our effective tax rate. A substantial increase in our tax burden could have an adverse effect on our financial results. Please see “*Item 8: Financial Information — A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information*” for further information.

Restrictions on the remittance of RMB into and out of China and governmental control of currency conversion may limit our ability to pay dividends and other obligations, and affect the value of your investment.

A portion of our cash and cash equivalents are held in China in Renminbi, referred to as “RMB”. The government of the People’s Republic of China, referred to as the “PRC”, imposes controls on the convertibility of the RMB into foreign currencies and the remittance of currency out of China. We may convert a portion of our revenues held by our subsidiary in China into other currencies to meet our foreign currency obligations. Shortages in the availability of foreign currency may restrict the ability of our PRC subsidiary to remit sufficient foreign currency to pay dividends or other payments to us, or otherwise satisfy its foreign currency denominated obligations.

Under existing PRC foreign exchange regulations, payments of current account items, including profit distributions, interest payments and trade and service-related foreign exchange transactions, can be made in foreign currencies without prior approval of the PRC State Administration of Foreign Exchange, referred to as “SAFE”, as long as certain routine procedural requirements are fulfilled. However, approval from or registration with competent government authorities is required where the RMB is to be converted into foreign currency and remitted out of China to pay capital expenses such as the repayment of loans denominated in foreign currencies. The PRC government may at its discretion restrict access to foreign currencies for current account transactions in the future. If the foreign exchange control system prevents us from obtaining sufficient foreign currencies to satisfy our foreign currency demands, we may not be able to utilize such funds for purposes outside of China.

Failures or security breaches of our information technology systems could disrupt our operations and negatively impact our business.

We use information technologies, including information systems and related infrastructure as well as cloud applications and services, to store, transmit, process and record sensitive information, including employee information and financial and operating data, communicate with our employees and business partners and for many other activities related to our business. Our business partners, including operating partners, suppliers, customers and financial institutions, are also dependent on digital technology. Some of these business partners may be provided limited access to our sensitive information or our information systems and related infrastructure in the ordinary course of business.

Despite security design and controls, our information technology systems, and those of our third-party partners and providers, may be vulnerable to a variety of interruptions, including during the process of upgrading or replacing software, databases or components thereof, natural disasters, terrorist attacks, telecommunications failures, computer viruses, cyber-attacks, the activities of hackers, unauthorized access attempts and other security issues or may be breached due to employee error, malfeasance or other disruptions. Any such interruption or breach could result in operational disruptions or the misappropriation of sensitive data that could subject us to civil and criminal penalties, litigation or have a negative impact on our reputation. There can be no assurance that such disruptions or misappropriations and the resulting repercussions will not negatively impact our cash flows and materially affect our results of operations or financial condition.

General Risks Faced by Us

Investors’ interests may be diluted and investors may suffer dilution in their net book value per share if we issue additional shares or raise funds through the sale of equity securities.

Our constituting documents authorize the issuance of our Common Shares and preference shares, issuable in series. In the event that we are required to issue any additional shares or enter into private placements to raise financing through the sale of equity securities, investors’ interests in us will be diluted and investors may suffer dilution in their net book value per share depending on the price at which such securities are sold. If we issue any such additional shares, such issuances will also cause a reduction in the proportionate ownership of all other shareholders. Further, any such issuance may result in a change of control of our company.

Certain factors may inhibit, delay or prevent a takeover of our company, which may adversely affect the price of our Common Shares.

Certain provisions of our charter documents may discourage, delay or prevent third parties from effecting a change of control or changes in our management in a tender offer or otherwise engaging in a merger or similar type of transaction with us. If a change of control or change of management is delayed or prevented, the market price of our Common Shares could decline.

Investors may face difficulties in protecting their interests, and their ability to protect their rights through U.S. courts may be limited, because we are incorporated under Cayman Islands law.

We are incorporated under the laws of the Cayman Islands and substantially all of our operations and assets are located outside the United States. Our corporate affairs are governed by our memorandum and articles of association, the Companies Law of the Cayman Islands (2016 Revision), referred to as the “Cayman Act” and the common law of the Cayman Islands. The rights of shareholders to take action against the directors, actions by minority shareholders and the fiduciary responsibilities of our directors to

us under Cayman Islands law are to a large extent governed by the common law of the Cayman Islands. The common law of the Cayman Islands is derived in part from comparatively limited judicial precedent in the Cayman Islands as well as from the common law of England, the decisions of whose courts are of persuasive authority, but are not binding, on a court in the Cayman Islands. The rights of our shareholders and the fiduciary responsibilities of our directors under Cayman Islands law are not as clearly established as they would be under statutes or judicial precedent in some jurisdictions in the United States. Some U.S. states, such as Delaware, have more fully developed and judicially interpreted bodies of corporate law than the Cayman Islands. In addition, Cayman Islands companies may not have standing to initiate a shareholder derivative action in a federal court of the United States.

In addition, a majority of our directors and officers are nationals and residents of countries other than the United States. The Cayman Islands courts are also unlikely to recognize or enforce against us judgments of courts of the United States based on certain civil liability provisions of U.S. securities laws; and to impose liabilities against us, in original actions brought in the Cayman Islands, based on certain civil liability provisions of U.S. securities laws that are penal in nature. There is no statutory recognition in the Cayman Islands of judgments obtained in the United States, although the courts of the Cayman Islands will in certain circumstances recognize and enforce a non-penal judgment of a foreign court of competent jurisdiction without retrial on the merits.

As a result of all of the above, our public shareholders may have more difficulty in protecting their interests in the face of actions taken by management, members of the board of directors or controlling shareholders than they would as public shareholders of a company incorporated in the United States.

ITEM 4: INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY

A. History and Development of the Company

We are a corporation organized under the Cayman Act. We were incorporated on June 5, 2017. Our office is located at Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong, SAR China, and its telephone number is +1 844 331 3343. Our registered office is located at 4th Floor, Harbour Place, 103 South Church Street, Grand Cayman, Cayman Islands. Our website address is www.mfcbancorp.com.

We are an international merchant bank that provides financial services and facilitates structured trade for corporations and institutions. We specialize in markets that are not adequately addressed by traditional sources of supply and finance, with an emphasis on providing solutions for small and medium sized enterprises. We operate in multiple geographies and participate in industries including manufacturing, natural resources and medical supplies and services.

As a supplement to our operating business, we commit proprietary capital to assets and projects where intrinsic values are not properly reflected. These investments can take many forms, and our activities are generally not passive. The structure of each of these opportunities is tailored to each individual transaction.

On July 14, 2017, the former holding company of our group completed a plan of arrangement, referred to as the “Arrangement”, under the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia). The Arrangement was approved by its shareholders and the British Columbia Supreme Court in July 2017.

Pursuant to the Arrangement and the Court order, among other things: (i) each holder of its shares received one of our Common Shares for each share held as of the effective date of the Arrangement; and (ii) we acquired all of the outstanding shares of the former parent holding company.

Please see “*B. Business Overview*” for further information regarding our recent developments.

B. Business Overview

The following is a brief description of our business and recent activities.

Recent Developments

In 2018, we have, among other things:

- recognized a reversal of a prior impairment to our interest in an iron ore mine, located in Eastern Canada, which resulted in the recognition of a net non-cash after-tax gain of \$137.4 million in 2018. In 2018, the new operator of the project announced that it had completed financing to re-start mining operations and that it plans to re-start the mine in the summer of 2019 with an approximately two-year ramp-up period;

- further lowered our structural cost profile and reduced our headcount to 216 employees worldwide from 230 at the end of 2017;
- reduced our selling, general and administrative expenses by approximately 42% to \$26.4 million in 2018 from \$45.5 million in 2017 and reduced our costs of sales and services in total by approximately 51% to \$129.5 million in 2018 from \$263.6 million in the prior year. This was primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies and the deconsolidation of certain merchant banking subsidiaries. Excluding the gain on the disposition of subsidiaries of \$25.8 million, in 2018, the reduction of costs and sales and services would have been \$155.3 million;
- together with dispositions of non-core assets and businesses over the last two years, re-focused our business and re-aligned our balance sheet with our business and goals going forward, including the elimination of related borrowings and long-term debt;
- entered into a settlement agreement through certain of our subsidiaries related to proceedings respecting the insolvent estate of certain of our former hydrocarbon subsidiaries. As a result of the settlement, we incurred a non-cash charge of \$5.6 million, which was the carrying value of certain hydrocarbon properties and related assets which we contributed under the settlement;
- recognized a non-cash credit loss of \$21.8 million and subsequently wrote-off the remaining receivable balance from a former customer group; and
- completed merchant banking transactions which resulted in certain subsidiaries and related long-term debt being deconsolidated. These transactions resulted in a net after tax gain of \$17.9 million.

See “*Item 5. Operating and Financial Revenues and Prospects — Results of Operations*” for further information.

Name Change / Consolidation and Split

A meeting of our shareholders is scheduled to be held on May 31, 2019. At the meeting, shareholders will be asked to approve the change of our name to “Scully Limited”, which we believe better reflects our business strategy and profile.

In addition, at the meeting, shareholders will also consider the approval of a consolidation of our Common Shares on a 25 for 1 basis, referred to as the “Consolidation”, and subsequent forward split of such shares on a 1 for 25 basis, referred to collectively as the “Consolidation/Split”. No fractional shares will be issued as a result of the Consolidation to registered shareholders (i.e. shareholders who hold their Common Shares in registered form and not beneficially through a broker or other intermediary), with such fractional shares to be combined and sold by our transfer agent and the proceeds thereof to be paid to registered holders of fractional shares on a pro rata basis. Subject to receipt of requisite shareholder approval, we currently expect the name change and Consolidation/Split to be completed on or about June 3, 2019. It is expected that the Consolidation/Split will further reduce our administrative costs going forward.

Business Segments

Our business is divided into two operating segments: (i) Merchant Banking, which includes our royalty interest, captive supply assets, financial services and proprietary investing activities; and (ii) All Other, which encompasses our corporate and other investments and business interests, primarily being our business activities in medical equipment, instruments, supplies and services.

Merchant Banking

Our merchant banking segment includes our interest in an iron ore mine, captive supply assets and financial services, proprietary investing activities and hydrocarbon interests. Under our business model, such activities are generally interlinked. The sale of products from our captive supply assets, represented the majority of our revenue in 2018.

We derive revenue from a mining sub-lease of the lands upon which the Scully iron ore mine is situated in Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada. The sub-lease commenced in 1956 and expires in 2055. In November 2018, the operator announced that it had completed financing to re-start the mine and that it plans to re-start the mine in the summer of 2019, with ramp-up of production to continue through to 2021. See “— *D. Property, Plants and Equipment*”.

We also own the Bank, which is licensed in Europe. The Bank does not engage in general retail or commercial banking, but provides specialty banking services, focused on merchant banking, to our customers, suppliers and group members. In addition, we hold an interest in certain real estate, which is held for sale and located in Germany.

We make proprietary investments as part of our overall merchant banking activities and we seek to realize gains on such investments over time. We seek to participate in many industries, emphasizing those business opportunities where the perceived intrinsic value is not properly recognized, often as a result of financial or other distress affecting them. These investments can take many forms and can include acquiring entire businesses or portions thereof, investing in equity or investing in existing indebtedness (secured and unsecured) of businesses or in new equity or debt issues. These activities are generally not passive. The structure of each of these opportunities is tailored to each individual transaction.

We hold various production and processing assets, including: (a) a zinc alloy processing facility, located in Slovakia, whose customers include steel companies and other related industry suppliers in Europe; (b) a hydro-electric power plant located in Africa; (c) a non-ferrous rolling mill in Germany whose customers include companies in automotive, engineering and other industries; and (d) hydrocarbon production and processing in Canada.

All Other

Our All Other segment encompasses our corporate and other investments and business interests, primarily relating to business activities in medical equipment, instruments, supplies and services.

Competitive Conditions

Our business is intensely competitive and we expect it to remain so. We operate in a highly competitive environment in most of our markets and we face competition in our all of our activities, principally from international banks, the majority of which are European, North American or Latin American regulated banks, in our finance and fee-generating activities. Such competition may have the effect of reducing spreads on our financing activities.

Our business is small compared to our competitors in the sector. Many of our competitors have far greater financial resources, a broader range of products and sources of supply, larger customer bases, greater name recognition and marketing resources, a larger number of senior professionals to serve their clients' needs, greater global reach and more established relationships with clients than we do. These competitors may be better able to respond to changes in business conditions, compete for skilled professionals, finance acquisitions, fund internal growth and compete for market share generally.

We believe that our experience and operating structure permit us to respond more rapidly to our clients' needs than many of our larger competitors. These traits are important to small and mid-sized business enterprises, many of which do not have large internal corporate finance departments to handle their capital requirements. We develop a partnership approach to assist our clients. This often permits us to develop multiple revenue sources from the same client. For example, we may commit our own capital to make a proprietary investment in its business or capital structure.

Regulation

Our operations are international in nature and are subject to the laws and regulations of a number of international jurisdictions, as well as oversight by regulatory agencies and bodies in those jurisdictions. In particular, the banking industry is subject to extensive regulation and oversight. The operations of our Bank are subject to the regulations and directives issued by the European Union, as well as any additional Maltese legislation. The Bank is subject to direct supervision by the Malta Financial Services Authority and indirect supervision by the European Central Bank. The regulations which most significantly affect our Bank, or which could most significantly affect it in the future, relate to capital requirements, liquidity and the funding and development of a banking union in the European Union. As a Maltese credit institution, the Bank is subject to the Capital Requirements Directive Framework, referred to as the "CRD IV Framework", through which the European Union began implementing the Basel III Capital reforms from January 1, 2014, with certain requirements in the process of being phased in by January 1, 2019. The CRD IV Framework, among other things, requires regulatory reporting of "large exposures", which are generally exposures to a client or group of connected clients in excess of 10% of the Bank's statutory capital base and such large exposures cannot be greater than 25% of the Bank's statutory capital base, after taking into account eligible credit risk mitigation.

We hold a portion of our cash and cash equivalents in China in RMB. Under the 2008 Foreign Currency Administration Rules, if documents certifying the purposes of the conversion of RMB into foreign currency are submitted to the relevant foreign exchange conversion bank, the RMB may be convertible for current account items, including the distribution of dividends, interest and royalties payments, and trade and service-related foreign exchange transactions. Conversion of RMB for capital account items, such as direct investment, loans, securities investment and repatriation of investment, however, is subject to the approval of the government of SAFE or its local counterparts.

Under the 1996 Administration Rules of the Settlement, Sale and Payment of Foreign Exchange, foreign-invested enterprises may only buy, sell and/or remit foreign currencies at banks authorized to conduct foreign exchange business after providing valid commercial documents and, in the case of capital account item transactions, obtaining approval from SAFE or its local counterparts. Capital investments by PRC entities outside of China, after obtaining the required approvals from the relevant approval authorities, such as the Ministry of Commerce and the National Development and Reform Commission or their local counterparts, are also required to register with SAFE or its local counterparts.

SAFE promulgated a circular on November 19, 2010, or Circular No. 59, which tightens the examination on the authenticity of settlement of net proceeds from an offering and requires that the settlement of net proceeds shall be in accordance with the description in its prospectus. On March 30, 2015, the SAFE issued the Circular on Reform of the Administrative Rules of the Payment and Settlement of Foreign Exchange Capital of Foreign-Invested Enterprises, or SAFE Circular 19, which became effective on June 1, 2015. Pursuant to SAFE Circular 19, foreign-invested enterprises may either continue to follow the current payment-based foreign currency settlement system or elect to follow the “conversion-at-will” regime of foreign currency settlement. Where a foreign-invested enterprise follows the conversion-at-will regime of foreign currency settlement, it may convert part or all of the amount of the foreign currency in its capital account into RMB at any time. The converted RMB will be kept in a designated account labeled as settled but pending payment, and if the foreign-invested enterprise needs to make payment from such designated account, it still needs to go through the review process with its bank and provide necessary supporting documents. SAFE Circular 19, therefore, has substantially lifted the restrictions on the usage by a foreign-invested enterprise of its RMB registered capital converted from foreign currencies. According to SAFE Circular 19, such RMB capital may be used at the discretion of the foreign-invested enterprise and the SAFE will eliminate the prior approval requirement and only examine the authenticity of the declared usage afterwards. In addition, as Circular 19 was promulgated recently, there remain substantial uncertainties with respect to the interpretation and implementation of this circular by relevant authorities.

Our hydrocarbon interests are subject to various Canadian governmental regulations including those imposed by the Alberta Energy Regulator and Alberta Utilities Commission. Matters subject to regulation include discharge permits for drilling operations, drilling and abandonment bonds and pooling of properties and taxation. The production, handling, storage, transportation and disposal of oil and gas, by-products thereof, and other substances and materials produced or used in connection with such operations are also subject to regulation under federal, provincial and local laws and regulations. These hydrocarbon operations are subject to decommissioning obligations in connection with its indirect ownership interests in hydrocarbon assets, including well sites, gathering systems and processing facilities. The total decommissioning obligation is estimated based on the net ownership interest in wells and facilities, estimated costs to reclaim and abandon same and the estimated timing of the costs to be incurred in future years. We have estimated the net present value of total decommissioning obligations to be \$13.6 million as at December 31, 2018.

C. Organizational Structure

The following table describes our material subsidiaries as at December 31, 2018, their respective jurisdictions of organization and our interest in respect of each subsidiary. The table excludes subsidiaries that only hold inter-company assets and liabilities and do not have active businesses or whose results and net assets do not materially impact our consolidated results and net assets.

<u>Subsidiaries</u>	<u>Country of Incorporation</u>	<u>Proportion of Interest⁽¹⁾</u>
MFC (A) Ltd.	Marshall Islands	100%
MFC (D) Ltd.	Marshall Islands	100%
Brock Metals s.r.o.	Slovakia	100%
1178936 B.C. Ltd.	Canada	100%

Notes:

(1) Our proportional voting interests are identical to our proportional beneficial interests, except that (i) we hold a 99.72% proportional beneficial interest in each of MFC (A) Ltd. and MFC (D) Ltd.; and (ii) our holding company subsidiary that is the parent of Brock Metals s.r.o. granted rights in 2017 to an employee incentive corporation to acquire up to 10% of its share capital on a diluted basis at a price to be no less or more than the then existing net tangible asset value. The rights expire in 2027 and, as at December 31, 2018, such rights had been exercised in respect of less than 0.5% of the ownership.

Please see Note 31 to our audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 for further information.

D. Property, Plants and Equipment

We have offices at Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong, SAR China.

We believe that our existing facilities are adequate for our needs through the end of the year ending December 31, 2019. Should we require additional space at that time or prior thereto, we believe that such space can be secured on commercially reasonable terms.

We also hold an interest under a mining sub-lease related to the Scully iron ore mine located in Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada, which commenced in 1956 and expires in 2055. The mine site is located approximately three kilometers west of the town of Wabush and is connected by rail access to the Port of Sept-Iles, Quebec.

The mine lies within the Labrador Trough in Western Labrador. The Sokoman Formation is an iron formation that consists of three iron bearing formations, named the Upper, Middle and Lower Iron Formations. The Sokoman Formation is more than 300 m thick near the mine and has been subjected to two episodes of folding and metamorphism during the Hudsonian and Greenville orogenies, resulting in a complex structural pattern in the Wabush Area. The younger Menihek and Shabagamo Formations and the older Denault, Attikamagen, and Wishart Formations all outcrop in the vicinity of the mine site. The mineral deposit consists of folded and faulted stratigraphic beds of iron-bearing units within the regional Sokoman Iron Formation. The ore minerals are hematite (specularite), magnetite, and martite. The waste minerals are quartz and hydrated iron oxides such as limonite and goethite. Manganese oxides also occur in banks or are disseminated throughout the iron-bearing units.

Iron ore was first reported in the area of the mine in 1933. In 1956, Picklands Mathers & Company, referred to as “Picklands”, began work on the project and started the first intensive geological, metallurgical and economic investigations thereon. The mine was operated by Picklands from 1965 to 1986, when Picklands was acquired by Cleveland-Cliffs Inc., referred to as “Cliffs”, who operated it from 1986 until being put on care and maintenance in February 2014. For most of its life until 2010, the mine was operated as a joint venture owned by Stelco, Dofasco, Inland Steel, Acme Steel and Cliffs. Cliffs exercised a right of first refusal in February 2010 to acquire 100% ownership of the property. Cliffs placed the mine and concentrator on care and maintenance in February 2014 and, in 2015, commenced proceedings under the *Companies’ Creditors Arrangement Act*, referred to as the “CCAA”. The mine was acquired by Tacora Resources Inc. in July 2017 and, in November 2018, Tacora announced that it had completed financing that, together with existing commitments it had received, would be sufficient to fund a proposed re-start of the mine and announced that it plans to re-start the mine in the summer of 2019, with ramp-up of operations to continue to 2021.

In the third quarter of 2017, we entered into a settlement agreement with the new operator in respect of an underpayment of royalties under the lease by the past operator, whereby we received \$5.6 million in settlement of such claims. Pursuant to such agreement, we also amended and restated the sub-lease

underlying our interest. As a result, our royalty interest is now a 7.0% net revenue royalty interest on iron ore produced from the mine and 4.2% net revenue royalty interest on iron ore produced from tailings and other disposed materials. Under the terms of the sub-lease, we are entitled to minimum payments of \$3.25 million per year.

The mine site includes electrical infrastructure, a maintenance facility with five bays and cranes, warehouses, a wash bay, explosive storage, a machine shop, dewatering equipment, fuel storage, administration buildings, a concentrator plant and rail load-out and track infrastructure.

As at December 31, 2018, we had hydrocarbon interests located in west central Alberta, Canada comprised of approximately 75 producing and 81 non-producing natural gas wells and approximately 7 producing and 14 non-producing oil wells and an average 71% working interest in approximately 86,572 gross acres of land.

ITEM 4A: UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 5: OPERATING AND FINANCIAL REVIEW AND PROSPECTS

The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 should be read in conjunction with our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere herein.

General

We are a merchant bank that provides financial services and facilitates structured trade for corporations and institutions. Our business activities involve customized structured financial solutions and are supported by captive sources and products secured from third parties. We do business in multiple geographies and specialize in a wide range of industrial products.

We also commit our own capital to promising enterprises and invest and otherwise capture investment opportunities for our own account. We seek to invest in businesses or assets whose intrinsic value is not properly reflected in their share price or value. Our investing activities are generally not passive. We actively seek investments where our financial expertise and management can add or unlock value.

Our results of operations have been and may continue to be affected by many factors of a global nature, including economic and market conditions, the availability of capital, the level and volatility of equity prices and interest rates, currency values, asset prices and other market indices, technological changes, the availability of credit, inflation and legislative and regulatory developments. Our results of operations may also be materially affected by competitive factors. Our competitors include firms traditionally engaged in merchant banking such as investment banks, along with other capital sources such as hedge funds, private equity firms and insurance companies on a global basis.

Our results of operations for any particular period may also be materially affected by our realization on proprietary investments. These investments are made to maximize total return through long-term appreciation and recognized gains on divestment. We realize on our proprietary investments through a variety of methods including sales, capital restructuring or other forms of divestment.

Business Environment

Our financial performance is, and our consolidated results in any period can be, materially affected by economic conditions and financial markets generally, including the availability of capital, the availability of credit and the level of market and commodity price volatility. Our results of operations may also be materially affected by competitive factors. Our competitors include firms traditionally engaged in merchant banking as well as other capital sources such as hedge funds and private equity firms and other companies engaged in similar activities in Europe, Asia and globally.

We operate internationally and therefore our financial performance and position are impacted by changes in the Canadian dollar, our reporting currency, against the other functional currencies of our international subsidiaries and operations, particularly the Euro. As at December 31, 2018, the Canadian dollar had weakened by 3.6% against the Euro from the end of 2017. We recognized a net \$3.1 million currency

translation adjustment gain in other comprehensive income within equity in 2018, compared to a currency translation adjustment loss of \$4.3 million in 2017. In addition, we recognized net gains of \$3.6 million on exchange differences on foreign currency transactions in our consolidated statement of operations in 2018, compared to net losses of \$1.0 million in 2017.

Results of Operations

The following table sets forth certain selected operating results and other financial information for each of the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
	(In thousands, except per share amounts)		
Revenue	\$ 139,751	\$ 274,035	\$ 1,131,657
Costs of sales and services	129,522	263,586	1,061,052
Selling, general and administrative expenses	26,365	45,472	79,164
Share-based compensation – selling, general and administrative Loss on settlement	69 5,600	2,876 —	— —
Finance costs	2,125	8,415	24,102
Impairment of available-for-sale securities	—	—	91
Reversal of impairment of hydrocarbon resource properties and property, plant and equipment, net	(188,203)	(8,945)	(8,566)
Net income (loss) attributable to owners of the parent company	112,276	(47,855)	(25,361)
Earnings (loss) per share – basic and diluted	8.96	(3.81)	(2.01)

The following table provides a breakdown of revenue for each of the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
	(In thousands)		
Merchant banking products and services	\$ 124,059	\$ 249,581	\$ 1,078,745
Interest	676	973	3,056
Dividends	168	—	6
Gain on securities, net	3,856	—	—
Other ⁽¹⁾	10,992	23,481	49,850
Revenue	<u>\$ 139,751</u>	<u>\$ 274,035</u>	<u>\$ 1,131,657</u>

Note:

(1) Includes other revenues from merchant banking and all other segments.

Year Ended December 31, 2018 Compared to the Year Ended December 31, 2017

The following is a breakdown of our revenue by segment for each of the years indicated:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(In thousands)	
Revenue:		
Merchant banking	\$ 134,496	\$ 256,412
All other	5,255	17,623
	<u>\$ 139,751</u>	<u>\$ 274,035</u>

The following table illustrates our revenue by geographic distribution in the fiscal years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	%	
Germany	37	45
Other European countries	48	33
Americas	11	15
Asia and other	4	7

The following is a breakdown of revenues from merchant banking products and services by product and service for each of the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(In thousands)	
Metals	\$ 107,540	\$ 143,572
Plastics	—	98
Steel products	—	23,898
Minerals, chemicals and alloys	—	57,768
Hydrocarbons	10,371	8,931
Royalties	(2,437)	8,868
Power/electricity	4,254	4,215
Total sales by products	119,728	247,350
Fees	4,331	2,231
Revenue from products and services	<u>\$ 124,059</u>	<u>\$ 249,581</u>

In 2018, our metals, steel products, minerals, chemicals and alloys revenue decreased from 2017 as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies. In 2018, our royalties revenue decreased as a result of the reversal of revenue previously recognized in 2017 being reclassified in 2018 due to the terms of the underlying agreement. Our hydrocarbon revenue increased primarily due to increased pricing and production.

Based upon the average exchange rates for 2018, the Canadian dollar was lower by approximately 4.3% in value against the Euro compared to the average exchange rates for 2017.

Revenue for 2018 decreased to \$139.8 million from \$274.0 million in 2017, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies, including plastics, steel products and minerals, chemicals and alloys, partially offset by increased pricing and production of hydrocarbons.

Revenue for our merchant banking business for 2018 decreased to \$134.5 million from \$256.4 million in 2017, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies, including plastics, steel products and minerals, chemicals and alloys, partially offset by increased pricing and production of hydrocarbons.

Revenue for our all other segment were \$5.3 million in 2018, compared to \$17.6 million in 2017 as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines.

Costs of sales and services decreased to \$129.5 million during 2018 from \$263.6 million in 2017, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies and the net gain recognized in connection with our deconsolidation of certain merchant banking subsidiaries, partially offset by credit losses recognized in connection with an insolvent customer. See “*Item 4: Information on the Company — B. Business Overview — Recent Developments*”.

The following is a breakdown of our costs of sales and services for each of the years indicated:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(In thousands)	
Merchant banking products and services	\$ 119,552	\$ 223,049
Credit losses on loans and receivables and guarantees, net of recoveries	34,985	23,923
Market value decrease (increase) on commodity inventories	109	(400)
Loss (gain) on derivative contracts, net	794	(1,934)
Loss on securities, net	—	619
Dispositions of subsidiaries	(25,771)	10,219
Gains on settlements of liabilities	(9,502)	(3,779)
Changes in fair value of a loan payable measured at FVTPL	167	—
Other	9,188	11,889
Total costs of sales and services	<u>\$ 129,522</u>	<u>\$ 263,586</u>

In 2018, we recognized credit losses on loans and receivables (net of recoveries) of \$35.0 million, which included \$21.1 million related to an insolvent customer and \$10.0 million relating to receivables due from former subsidiaries, compared to \$23.9 million in 2017.

We recognized a gain on the disposition of subsidiaries of \$25.8 million in 2018, which consisted of the difference between the book value of such net assets (or net liabilities) and the consideration received, compared to a loss of \$10.2 million in 2017 on the disposition of subsidiaries.

Selling, general and administrative expenses decreased to \$26.4 million in 2018 from \$45.5 million in 2017 primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines, resulting in the deconsolidation of certain subsidiaries, the closure of certain of our offices and structural cost reductions.

In 2018, finance costs decreased to \$2.1 million from \$8.4 million in 2017 as a result of a decrease in bank indebtedness.

In 2018, we recognized a non-cash gain of \$188.2 million in connection with the reversal of prior impairments on our interest in an iron ore mine, not including the recognition of a deferred tax liability of \$50.8 million recognized in connection with such reversal. After reviewing recent developments in respect of the underlying mine, including, among other things, the current operator's plans and activities, our management determined to reverse the previously recognized impairment loss. In 2017, we recognized a non-cash reversal of \$8.9 million in connection with prior impairments on our remaining hydrocarbon properties and impairment on property, plant and equipment.

In 2018, we recognized a net foreign currency transaction gain of \$3.6 million, compared to a net foreign currency transaction loss of \$1.0 million in 2017, in our consolidated statement of operations. The foreign currency transaction gain represents exchange differences arising on the settlement of monetary items and the disposition of subsidiaries with positive accumulated other comprehensive income due to foreign exchange or on translating monetary items into our functional currencies at rates different from those at which they were translated on initial recognition during the period or in previous financial statements.

We recognized an income tax expense (other than resource revenue taxes) of \$56.1 million in 2018, compared to an income tax expense of \$6.9 million in 2017. The increase in the income tax expense in 2018 was primarily the result of the deferred tax expenses relating to the reversal of the impairment charges on our interest in an iron ore mine and the deconsolidation of subsidiaries. Our income tax paid in cash, excluding resource revenue taxes, during 2018 was \$2.0 million, compared to \$1.7 million in 2017. We also recognized a resource revenue tax recovery of \$0.5 million in 2018, compared to an expense of \$1.8 million in 2017.

Overall, we recognized an income tax expense of \$55.6 million (income tax expense of \$56.1 million and resource revenue tax recovery of \$0.5 million) in 2018, compared to an income tax expense of \$8.7 million (income tax expense of \$6.9 million and resource revenue taxes of \$1.8 million) in 2017.

In 2018, our net income attributable to shareholders was \$112.3 million, or \$8.96 per share on a basic and diluted basis, compared to a net loss of \$47.9 million, or \$3.81 per share on a basic and diluted basis, in 2017.

Year Ended December 31, 2017 Compared to the Year Ended December 31, 2016

The following is a breakdown of our revenue by segment for each of the years indicated:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
	(In thousands)	
Revenue:		
Merchant banking	\$ 256,412	\$ 1,095,896
All other	17,623	35,761
	<u>\$ 274,035</u>	<u>\$ 1,131,657</u>

The following table illustrates our revenue by geographic distribution in the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
	%	%
Germany	45	25
Other European countries	33	37
Americas	15	25
Asia and other	7	13

The following is a breakdown of our revenue by merchant banking product and service for each of the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
	(In thousands)	
Metals	\$ 143,572	\$ 223,244
Plastics	98	25,277
Wood products	—	13,385
Steel products	23,898	298,772
Minerals, chemicals and alloys	57,768	483,806
Hydrocarbons	8,931	18,094
Royalties	8,868	4,875
Power/electricity	4,215	5,882
Total sales by products	<u>247,350</u>	<u>1,073,335</u>
Fees	<u>2,231</u>	<u>5,410</u>
Revenue from products and services	<u>\$ 249,581</u>	<u>\$ 1,078,745</u>

Our metals, plastics, wood products, steel products, minerals, chemicals and alloys revenue decreased from 2016 as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies. In 2017, our royalties revenue increased primarily as a result of the recognition of \$5.6 million for the underpayment of resource property royalties as a result of our settlement with the current operator of such interest. Our hydrocarbon revenue decreased primarily due to the pricing environment and the shut-in of certain wells during the year.

Based upon the average exchange rates for 2017, the Canadian dollar strengthened by approximately 0.1% in value against the Euro compared to the average exchange rates for 2016.

Revenue for 2017 decreased to \$274.0 million from \$1,131.7 million in 2016, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies.

Revenue for our merchant banking business for 2017 decreased to \$256.4 million from \$1,095.9 million in 2016, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines.

Revenue for our all other segment were \$17.6 million in 2017, compared to \$35.8 million in 2016. The decrease was primarily as a result of the expiry of our eye care lease due to the substantially higher associated costs and capital expenditures required.

Costs of sales and services decreased to \$263.6 million during 2017 from \$1,061.1 million in 2016, primarily as a result of our decision to exit certain product lines and geographies.

The following is a breakdown of our costs of sales and services for each of the years indicated:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
	(In thousands)	
Merchant banking products and services	\$ 223,049	\$ 1,027,627
Credit losses on loans and receivables and guarantees, net of recoveries	23,923	17,023
Market value (increase) decrease on commodity inventories	(400)	4,273
(Gain) loss on derivative contracts, net	(1,934)	521
Loss on securities, net	619	116
Dispositions of subsidiaries	10,219	(2,585)
Gains on settlements of liabilities	(3,779)	—
Other	11,889	14,077
Total costs of sales and services	<u>\$ 263,586</u>	<u>\$ 1,061,052</u>

In 2017, we recognized credit losses on loans and receivables (net of recoveries) of \$23.9 million, which included \$8.6 million relating to receivables due from a former subsidiary that was deconsolidated in 2015, compared to \$17.0 million in 2016.

We recognized a loss on the disposition of subsidiaries of \$10.2 million in 2017, which consisted of the difference between the book value of such assets and the consideration received, compared to a gain of \$2.6 million in 2016 on the disposition of subsidiaries.

Selling, general and administrative expenses decreased to \$45.5 million in 2017 from \$79.2 million in 2016 primarily as a result of the sale of non-core subsidiaries, the closure of certain offices and structural cost reductions.

In 2017, finance costs decreased to \$8.4 million from \$24.1 million in 2016, primarily as a result of a decrease in bank indebtedness.

In late 2015, one of our customers in the wood products market experienced financial difficulties and, in February 2016, filed for insolvency. As a result, we recognized allowances for credit losses in connection with such customer and its affiliates in 2015 and 2016. In 2017, our management continued to monitor and assess the collectability of the receivables. As a result of such review, we reversed and credited an allowance of \$1.5 million to profit or loss in the third quarter of 2017. In the fourth quarter of 2017, we disposed of certain subsidiaries which had trade receivables from such customer group. As a result, we had trade receivables due from this former customer group of \$21.4 million as at December 31, 2017, which were fully impaired in 2018.

In 2017, we recognized a net non-cash reversal of \$8.9 million in connection with prior impairments on our remaining hydrocarbon properties. In 2016, we recognized a net non-cash reversal of \$8.6 million in connection with prior impairments on our remaining hydrocarbon properties and impairment on property, plant and equipment.

In 2017, we recognized a net foreign currency transaction loss of \$1.0 million, compared to a net foreign currency transaction gain of \$7.5 million in 2016, in our consolidated statement of operations. The foreign currency transaction gain and loss primarily represent exchange differences arising on the settlement of monetary items or on translating monetary items into our functional currencies at rates different from those at which they were translated on initial recognition during the period or in previous financial statements and the gains and losses on our foreign currency derivatives and includes \$11.3 million reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income within equity to profit or loss, which stemmed from the disposition of an immaterial subsidiary during the year.

We recognized an income tax expense (other than resource revenue taxes) of \$6.9 million in 2017, compared to an income tax expense of \$6.0 million in 2016. Our income tax paid in cash, excluding resource revenue taxes, during 2017 was \$1.7 million, compared to \$2.8 million in 2016. We also recognized resource revenue taxes of \$1.8 million in 2017, compared to \$1.0 million in 2016.

Overall, we recognized an income tax expense of \$8.7 million (income tax expense of \$6.9 million and resource revenue taxes of \$1.8 million) in 2017, compared to an income tax expense of \$7.0 million (income tax expense of \$6.0 million and resource revenue taxes of \$1.0 million) in 2016.

In 2017, our net loss attributable to shareholders was \$47.9 million, or \$3.81 per share on a basic and diluted basis, compared to \$25.4 million, or \$2.01 per share on a basic and diluted basis, in 2016.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

General

Liquidity is of importance to our business as insufficient liquidity often results in underperformance.

Our objectives when managing capital are:

- to safeguard our ability to continue as a going concern so that we can continue to provide returns for shareholders and benefits for other stakeholders;
- to provide an adequate return to our shareholders by pricing products and services commensurately with the level of risk; and
- to maintain a flexible capital structure that optimizes the cost of capital at acceptable risk.

We set the amount of capital in proportion to risk. We manage our capital structure and make adjustments to it in the light of changes in economic conditions and the risk characteristics of the underlying assets. In order to maintain or adjust this capital structure, we may issue new shares or sell assets to reduce debt.

Consistent with others in our industry, we monitor capital on the basis of our net debt-to-equity ratio and long-term debt-to-equity ratio. The net debt-to-equity ratio is calculated as net debt divided by shareholders' equity. Net debt is calculated as total debt less cash and cash equivalents. The long-term debt-to-equity ratio is calculated as long-term debt divided by shareholders' equity. The computations are based on continuing operations.

The following table sets forth the calculation of our net debt-to-equity ratio as at the dates indicated:

	December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
	(In thousands, except ratio amounts)		
Total debt ⁽¹⁾	\$ —	\$ 43,733	\$ 116,813
Less: cash and cash equivalents	(67,760)	(74,870)	(120,676)
Net debt	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780	327,520
Net debt-to-equity ratio	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Note:

(1) Does not include a non-interest bearing loan payable of \$4.0 million as at December 31, 2018 which is measured at fair value through profit or loss and does not have a fixed repayment date. See “— *Financial Position*”.

There were no amounts in accumulated other comprehensive income relating to cash flow hedges, nor were there any subordinated debt instruments as at December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016. Our net debt-to-equity ratio as at December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 was not applicable as we had a net cash and cash equivalents balance.

The following table sets forth the calculation of our long-term debt-to-equity ratio as at the dates indicated:

	December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
	(In thousands, except ratio amounts)		
Long-term debt, less current portion ⁽¹⁾	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 80,564
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780	327,520
Long-term debt-to-equity ratio	Not applicable	Not applicable	0.25

Note:

(1) Does not include a non-interest bearing loan payable of \$4.0 million as at December 31, 2018 which is measured at fair value through profit or loss and does not have a fixed repayment date. See “— *Financial Position*”.

During 2018, our strategy, which remained unchanged from 2017 and 2016, was to maintain our net debt-to-equity ratio and long-term debt-to-equity ratio at manageable levels.

Cash Flows

Due to the number of businesses we engage in, our cash flows are not necessarily reflective of net earnings and net assets for any reporting period. As a result, instead of using a traditional cash flow analysis solely based on cash flow statements, our management believes it is more useful and meaningful to analyze our cash flows by overall liquidity and credit availability. Please see the discussion on our financial position, short-term bank loans, facilities and long-term debt below.

Our business can be cyclical and our cash flows can vary accordingly. Our principal operating cash expenditures are for our working capital, proprietary investments and general and administrative expenses.

Working capital levels fluctuate throughout the year and are affected by the level of our operations, the markets and prices for commodities, the timing of collection of receivables and the payment of payables and expenses. Changes in the volume of transactions can affect the level of receivables and influence overall working capital levels. We currently have a sufficient level of cash on hand and expected cash flows from operations to meet our working capital and other requirements as well as unexpected cash demands.

The following table presents a summary of cash flows for each of the periods indicated:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
	(In thousands)		
Cash flows (used in) provided by operating activities	\$ (7,191)	\$ (3,197)	\$ 99,867
Cash flows (used in) provided by investing activities	(1,281)	(3,494)	35,482
Cash flows used in financing activities	(857)	(42,720)	(167,275)
Exchange rate effect on cash and cash equivalents	2,219	3,605	(37,540)
Decrease in cash and cash equivalents	(7,110)	(45,806)	(69,466)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Operating activities used cash of \$7.2 million in 2018, compared to using cash of \$3.2 million in 2017. In 2018, a decrease in receivables provided cash of \$10.3 million in 2018, compared to \$30.2 million in 2017. A decrease in short-term bank borrowings used cash of \$1.6 million in 2018, compared to \$34.5 million in 2017. An increase in inventories used cash of \$1.4 million in 2018, compared to a decrease in inventories providing cash of \$19.6 million in 2017. An increase in account payables and accrued expenses provided cash of \$0.4 million in 2018, compared to a decrease in account payables using cash of \$26.5 million in 2017. Assets held for sale provided cash of \$nil in 2018 compared to a decrease in assets held for sale providing cash of \$12.6 million in 2017. A decrease in deposits, prepaid and other provided cash of \$0.1 million in 2018, compared to \$8.4 million in 2017.

Operating activities used cash of \$3.2 million in 2017, compared to providing cash of \$99.9 million in 2016. In 2017, a decrease in short-term bank borrowings used cash of \$34.5 million, compared to an increase in short-term bank borrowings providing cash of \$34.7 million in 2016. A decrease in receivables provided cash of \$30.2 million in 2017, compared to an increase in receivables using cash of \$16.9 million in 2016. A decrease in inventories provided cash of \$19.6 million in 2017, compared to \$184.9 million in 2016. A decrease in account payables and accrued expenses used cash of \$26.5 million in 2017, compared to \$124.5 million in 2016. A decrease in assets held for sale provided cash of \$12.6 million in 2017 compared to \$nil in 2016. The decrease in assets held for sale resulted from the disposition of our non-core Latin American commodities subsidiary. A decrease in deposits, prepaid and other provided cash of \$8.4 million in 2017, compared to \$24.7 million in 2016.

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Investing activities used cash of \$1.3 million in 2018, compared to \$3.5 million in 2017. The proceeds from sales of investment property provided cash of \$1.0 million in 2018, compared to \$nil for 2017. In 2018, the purchase of long-term securities used cash of \$1.2 million, compared to \$nil in 2017. In 2018, the dispositions of subsidiaries, net of cash and cash equivalents disposed of, used cash of \$0.8 million, compared to \$8.4 million in 2017. In 2018, purchases of property, plant and equipment, net of sales used cash of \$0.2 million, compared to net sales providing cash of \$4.8 million in 2017.

Investing activities used cash of \$3.5 million in 2017, compared to providing cash of \$35.5 million in 2016. In 2017, the dispositions of subsidiaries used cash of \$8.4 million, compared to providing cash of \$48.8 million in 2016. In 2017, sales of property, plant and equipment, net of purchases provided cash of \$4.8 million, compared to net purchases using cash of \$0.2 million in 2016.

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Net cash used by financing activities was \$0.9 million in 2018, compared to \$42.7 million in 2017. In 2018, dividends and a return of capital paid to non-controlling interests used cash of \$0.9 million, compared to \$1.6 million in 2017. A net decrease in debt used cash of \$nil in 2018, compared to \$42.3 million in 2017.

Net cash used by financing activities was \$42.7 million in 2017, compared to \$167.3 million in 2016. A net decrease in debt used cash of \$42.3 million in 2017, compared to \$165.6 million in 2016.

Financial Position

The following table sets out our selected financial information as at the dates indicated:

	December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(In thousands)	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 67,760	\$ 74,870
Short-term cash deposits	—	194
Short-term securities	7,400	5,127
Securities – derivatives	209	190
Trade receivables	5,343	34,259
Tax receivables, current portion	104	747
Other receivables	8,675	21,690
Inventories	11,406	9,826
Restricted cash	281	—
Deposits, prepaid and other	828	2,378
Total current assets	102,006	149,281
Working capital	74,799	56,512
Total assets	506,913	396,947
Short-term bank borrowings	—	2,074
Debt, current portion	—	43,733
Account payables and accrued expenses	26,315	44,750
Financial liabilities – derivatives	37	302
Income tax liabilities	855	1,910
Total current liabilities	27,207	92,769
Loan payable, long-term	3,981	—
Decommissioning obligations, long-term	13,641	13,699
Deferred income tax liabilities	66,421	10,303
Total liabilities	112,507	116,998
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780

We maintain an adequate level of liquidity, with a portion of our assets held in cash and cash equivalents and securities. The liquid nature of these assets provides us with flexibility in managing and financing our business and the ability to realize upon investment or business opportunities as they arise. We also use this liquidity in client-related services by acting as a financial intermediary for third parties (e.g., by acquiring a position or assets and reselling such position or assets) and for our own proprietary trading and investing activities.

As at December 31, 2018 cash and cash equivalents decreased to \$67.8 million from \$74.9 million as at December 31, 2017.

Inventories increased to \$11.4 million as at December 31, 2018, from \$9.8 million as at December 31, 2017, primarily as a result of foreign exchange movements and inventory purchases relating to our European production assets. Substantially all of our inventories were contracted at fixed prices or hedged as at December 31, 2018.

Trade receivables and other receivables were \$5.3 million and \$8.7 million, respectively, as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$34.3 million and \$21.7 million, respectively, as at December 31, 2017. The decrease in trade and other receivables was primarily as a result of the recognition of credit losses in respect of the remaining trade receivables due from an insolvent customer and the deconsolidation of subsidiaries.

We had short-term securities of \$7.4 million as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$5.1 million as at December 31, 2017.

Tax receivables, consisting primarily of refundable value-added taxes, were \$0.6 million as at December 31, 2018 and \$0.7 million as at December 31, 2017.

Deposits, prepaid and other assets were \$0.8 million as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$2.4 million as at December 31, 2017.

We had short-term financial assets relating to hedging derivatives of \$0.2 million as at each of December 31, 2018 and 2017. We had current liabilities relating to derivatives of \$37,000 as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$0.3 million as at December 31, 2017.

Account payables and accrued expenses were \$26.3 million as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$44.8 million as at December 31, 2017. The decrease was primarily due to gains recognized in connection with the settlement of liabilities in the period in connection with former subsidiaries and the deconsolidation of former subsidiaries.

We had deferred income tax liabilities of \$66.4 million as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$10.3 million as at the end of 2017. The increase in deferred income tax liabilities was primarily the result of the reversal of a prior impairment on our mining interest and the deconsolidation of a subsidiaries and the reversal of an impairment charge.

Our short-term bank borrowings were \$nil as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$2.1 million as at December 31, 2017, primarily as a result of the deconsolidation of subsidiaries.

Total long-term debt decreased to \$nil as at December 31, 2018, from \$43.7 million as at December 31, 2017, primarily as a result of the deconsolidation of subsidiaries.

We had a non-interest bearing loan payable, which is measured at fair value through profit or loss, of \$4.0 million as at December 31, 2018, compared to \$nil as at December 31, 2017. The loan does not have a fixed repayment date and the estimated fair value has been determined using a discount rate for similar investments. Please see Note 29 to our audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 for further information.

As at December 31, 2018, we had long-term decommissioning obligations of \$13.6 million relating to our hydrocarbon properties, which will be funded through cash flows from such interests over their operating lives, compared to \$13.7 million as at December 31, 2017.

Short-Term Bank Loans and Facilities

As part of our operations, we establish, utilize and maintain various kinds of credit lines and facilities with banks, brokers and insurers. Most of these facilities are short-term. These facilities are used in our day-to-day structured solutions and merchant banking business. The amounts drawn under such facilities fluctuate with the kind and level of transactions being undertaken.

As at December 31, 2018, we had credit facilities from banks aggregating \$22.3 million, comprised of: (i) non-recourse factoring lines for receivables financing of \$20.3 million; and (ii) a commodity hedging facility of \$2.0 million, which allows us to hedge industrial metals and products for our production subsidiaries. All of these facilities are renewable on a yearly basis or usable until further notice.

Long-Term Debt

As at December 31, 2018, we had no long-term debt. Please refer to Note 16 to our audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018, for further information.

Future Liquidity

We expect that there will be acquisitions of businesses or commitments to projects in the future. To achieve the long-term goals of expanding our assets and earnings, including through acquisitions, capital resources will be required. Depending on the size of a transaction, the capital resources that will be required can be substantial. The necessary resources will be generated from cash flows from operations, cash on hand, borrowings against our assets, sales of proprietary investments or the issuance of securities.

Foreign Currency

Our consolidated financial results are subject to foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations.

Our presentation currency is the Canadian dollar. We translate subsidiaries' assets and liabilities into Canadian dollars at the rate of exchange on the balance sheet date. Revenue and expenses are translated at exchange rates approximating those at the date of the transactions or, for practical reasons, the average exchange rates for the applicable periods, when they approximate the exchange rate as at the dates of the

transactions. As a substantial amount of revenue is generated in Euros, the financial position for any given period, when reported in Canadian dollars, can be significantly affected by the exchange rates for these currencies prevailing during that period. In addition, we also have exposure to the Chinese yuan and the United States dollar.

In 2018, we reported a net \$3.1 million currency translation adjustment gain under other comprehensive loss within equity. This compared to a net loss of \$4.3 million in 2017. This currency translation adjustment did not affect our profit and loss statement. The gain in 2018 was primarily a result of the weakening of the Canadian dollar against the Euro and the United States dollar from 2017.

Contractual Obligations

The following table sets out our obligations and commitments including contractual obligations and loans payable held at fair value from continuing operations as at December 31, 2018:

	Payments Due by Period ⁽¹⁾				Total
	(In thousands)				
<u>Contractual Obligations</u> ⁽²⁾	Less than 1 Year	1 – 3 Years	3 – 5 Years	More than 5 Years	
Operating lease obligations	\$ 1,327	\$ 1,402	\$ 902	\$ 1,155	\$ 4,786
Purchase obligations	686	—	—	—	686
Loan Payable ⁽³⁾	—	—	—	3,981	3,981
Total	<u>\$ 2,031</u>	<u>\$ 1,402</u>	<u>\$ 902</u>	<u>\$ 5,136</u>	<u>\$ 9,453</u>

Notes:

- (1) Undiscounted, except loan payable (see Note 3 below).
- (2) This table does not include non-financial instrument liabilities and guarantees.
- (3) Consists of a US dollar loan payable to a former subsidiary, which is interest free, does not have a fixed maturity date and is measured at fair value through profit or loss. The undiscounted contractual amount due to former subsidiary out of surplus cash of the applicable subsidiary note holder is \$57.4 million (US\$42,070). The payment amount disclosed here represents its fair value as at December 31, 2018. Inclusive of the undiscounted contractual amount due, total contractual obligations at December 31, 2018 are \$62.9 million. The actual repayment may be materially different from the amounts disclosed herein. See “— Financial Position” for further information.

Risk Management

Risk is an inherent part of our business and operating activities. The extent to which we properly and effectively identify, assess, monitor and manage each of the various types of risk involved in our activities is critical to our financial soundness and profitability. We seek to identify, assess, monitor and manage the following principal risks involved in our business activities: market, credit, liquidity, operational, legal and compliance, new business, reputational and other. Risk management is a multi-faceted process that requires communication, judgment and knowledge of financial products and markets. Our management takes an active role in the risk management process and requires specific administrative and business functions to assist in the identification, assessment and control of various risks. Our risk management policies, procedures and methodologies are fluid in nature and are subject to ongoing review and modification.

Inflation

We do not believe that inflation has had a material impact on our revenue or income over the past two fiscal years. However, increases in inflation could result in increases in our expenses, which may not be readily recoverable in the price of goods or services provided to our clients. To the extent that inflation results in rising interest rates and has other adverse effects on capital markets, it could adversely affect our financial position and profitability.

Application of Critical Accounting Policies

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires our management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reporting periods.

Our management routinely makes judgments and estimates about the effects of matters that are inherently uncertain. As the number of variables and assumptions affecting the probable future resolution of the uncertainties increase, these judgments become even more subjective and complex. We have identified

certain accounting policies that are the most important to the portrayal of our current financial condition and results of operations. Please refer to Note 2 to our audited consolidated financial statements included in this annual report on Form 20-F for a discussion of the significant accounting policies.

In the process of applying our accounting policies, management makes various judgments and estimates that can significantly affect the amounts it recognizes in the consolidated financial statements. The following is a description of the critical judgments and estimates that management has made in the process of applying our accounting policies and that have the most significant effects on the amounts recognized in the consolidated financial statements:

Identification of Cash-generating Units

Our assets are aggregated into cash-generating units, referred to as “CGUs”, for the purpose of assessing and calculating impairment, based on their ability to generate largely independent cash flows. The determination of CGUs requires judgment in defining the smallest identifiable group of assets that generate cash inflows that are largely independent of the cash inflows from other assets or groups of assets. CGUs have been determined based on similar geological structure, shared infrastructure, geographical proximity, product type and similar exposure to market risks. In the event facts and circumstances surrounding factors used to determine our CGUs change, we will re-determine the groupings of CGUs.

Impairment and Reversals of Impairment on Non-Financial Assets

The carrying amounts of our non-financial assets, other than deferred tax assets, are reviewed at the end of each reporting period to determine whether there is an indication of impairment or reversal of previously recorded impairment. If such indication exists, the recoverable amount is estimated.

Determining whether there are any indications of impairment or impairment reversals requires significant judgment of external factors, such as an extended change in prices or margins for hydrocarbon commodities or refined products, a significant change in an asset’s market value, a significant revision of estimated volumes, revision of future development costs, a change in the entity’s market capitalization or significant changes in the technological, market, economic or legal environment that would have an impact on our CGUs. Given that the calculations for recoverable amounts require the use of estimates and assumptions, including forecasts of commodity prices, marketing supply and demand, product margins and in the case of hydrocarbon properties, expected production volumes, it is possible that the assumptions may change, which may impact the estimated life of the CGU and may require a material adjustment to the carrying value of goodwill and non-financial assets.

Impairment losses recognized in prior years are assessed at the end of each reporting period for indications that the impairment has decreased or no longer exists. An impairment loss is reversed only to the extent that the carrying amount of the asset or CGU does not exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depletion, depreciation and amortization, if no impairment loss had been recognized.

Valuation of Investment Property

Investment properties are included in the consolidated statement of financial position at their market value, unless their fair value cannot be reliably determined at that time. The market value of investment properties is assessed annually by an independent qualified valuer, who is an authorized expert for the valuation of developed and undeveloped land in Germany, after taking into consideration the net income with inputs on realized basic rents, operating costs and damages and defects. The assumptions adopted in the property valuations are based on the market conditions existing at the end of the reporting period, with reference to current market sales prices and the appropriate capitalization rate. Changes in any of these inputs or incorrect assumptions related to any of these items could materially impact these valuations.

Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations

We apply judgment to determine whether an asset (or disposal group) is available for immediate sale in its present condition and that its sale is highly probable and therefore should be classified as held for sale at the balance sheet date. In order to assess whether it is highly probable that the sale can be completed within one year, or the extension period in certain circumstances, management reviews the business and economic factors, both macro and micro, which include the industry trends and capital markets, and the progress towards a sale transaction. It is also open to all forms of sales, including exchanges of non-current assets for other non-current assets when the exchange will have commercial substance in accordance with IAS 16, *Property, Plant and Equipment*.

A discontinued operation is a component of an entity (which comprises operations and cash flows that can be clearly distinguished, operationally and, for financial reporting purposes, from the rest of the entity) that either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale. While a component of the entity has distinguished financial data, judgments must be exercised on the presentation of inter-company transactions between components that are presented as discontinued operations and those that are presented as continuing operations. Furthermore, the allocation of income tax expense (recovery) also involves the exercise of judgments as the tax position of continuing operations may have an impact on the tax position of discontinued operations, or vice versa.

Consolidation

Judgment is required when assessing whether we control and therefore consolidate an entity, particularly an entity with complex share capital, management/decision-making or financing structures. Judgment is required to determine whether we have decision-making power over the key relevant activities of an investee, whether we have exposure or rights to variable returns from its involvement with the investee and whether we have the ability to use that power to affect its returns.

Purchase Price Allocations

For each business combination, we measure the identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed at their acquisition-date fair values. The determination of fair value requires us to make assumptions, estimates and judgments regarding future events, including the profit forecast of the new subsidiary in the future. The allocation process is inherently subjective and impacts the amounts assigned to individual identifiable assets and liabilities, including the fair value of long-lived assets, the recognition and measurement of any unrecorded intangible assets and/or contingencies and the final determination of the amount of goodwill or bargain purchase. The inputs to the exercise of judgments include legal, contractual, business and economic factors. As a result, the purchase price allocation impacts our reported assets and liabilities and future net earnings due to the impact on future depreciation, depletion and amortization and impairment tests.

Credit Losses and Impairment of Receivables

On January 1, 2018, we adopted IFRS 9, *Financial Instruments*, referred to as “IFRS 9”. As a result, we apply credit risk assessment and valuation methods to our trade and other receivables under IFRS 9 which establishes a single forward-looking expected loss impairment model to replace the incurred impairment model under IAS 39, *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement*.

We measure the loss allowance for a financial instrument at an amount equal to the lifetime expected credit losses if the credit risk on that financial instrument has increased significantly since initial recognition. The objective of the impairment requirements is to recognize lifetime expected credit losses for all financial instruments for which there have been significant increases in credit risk since initial recognition — whether assessed on an individual or collective basis — considering all reasonable and supportable information, including that which is forward-looking.

At each reporting date, our management assesses whether the credit risk on a financial instrument has increased significantly since initial recognition. When making the assessment, management uses the change in the risk of a default occurring over the expected life of the financial instrument instead of the change in the amount of expected credit losses. To make that assessment, management compares the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the reporting date with the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the date of initial recognition and consider reasonable and supportable information, that is available without undue cost or effort, that is indicative of significant increases in credit risk since initial recognition.

Allowance for credit losses is maintained at an amount considered adequate to absorb the expected credit losses. Such allowance for credit losses reflects our management's best estimate of changes in the credit risk on our financial instruments and judgments about economic conditions. The assessment of allowance for credit losses is a complex process, particularly on a looking-forward basis; which involves a significant degree of judgment and a high level of estimation uncertainty. The input factors include the assessment of the credit risk of our financial instruments, legal rights and obligations under all the contracts and the expected future cash flows from the financial instruments, which include inventories, mortgages and other credit enhancement instruments. The major source of estimation uncertainty relates to the likelihood of the various scenarios under which different amounts are expected to be recovered through the security in place

on the financial assets. The expected future cash flows are projected under different scenarios and weighted by probability, which involves the exercise of significant judgment. Estimates and judgments could change in the near-term and could result in a significant change to a recognized allowance.

Interests in Resource Properties and Reserve Estimates

We had interests in resource properties mainly comprised of an interest in an iron ore mine, and to a lesser extent, hydrocarbon properties, with an aggregate carrying amount of \$273.3 million as at December 31, 2018.

Estimation of reported recoverable quantities of proved and probable reserves include judgmental assumptions regarding production profile, prices of products produced, exchange rates, remediation costs, timing and amount of future development costs and production, transportation and marketing costs for future cash flows. It also requires interpretation of geological and geophysical models in anticipated recoveries. The economical, geological and technical factors used to estimate reserves may change from period to period. Changes in reported reserves can impact the carrying amounts of the Group's interests in resource properties and/or property, plant and equipment, the recognition of impairment losses and reversal of impairment losses, the calculation of depletion and depreciation, the provision for decommissioning obligations and the recognition of deferred income tax assets or liabilities due to changes in expected future cash flows. The recoverable quantities of reserves and estimated cash flows from our hydrocarbon interests are independently evaluated by reserve engineers at least annually. During the year ended December 31, 2018, we recognized a reversal of impairment of \$188.2 million in respect of our interest in an iron ore mine. See Note 13 to our audited annual consolidated financial statements for further information.

Our hydrocarbon reserves represent the estimated quantities of petroleum, natural gas and natural gas liquids which geological, geophysical and engineering data demonstrate with a specified degree of certainty to be economically recoverable in future years from known reservoirs and which are considered commercially producible. Such reserves may be considered commercially producible if management has the intention of developing and producing them and such intention is based upon: (a) a reasonable assessment of the future economics of such production; (b) a reasonable expectation that there is a market for all or substantially all the expected hydrocarbon production; and (c) evidence that the necessary production, transmission and transportation facilities are available or can be made available. Reserves may only be considered proven and probable if producibility is supported by either production or conclusive formation tests.

Included in interests in resource properties as at December 31, 2018, were exploration and evaluation assets with an aggregate carrying amount of \$17.0 million. Exploration and evaluation assets are assessed for impairment when facts and circumstances suggest that the carrying amount of an exploration and evaluation asset may exceed its recoverable amount and upon reclassification to hydrocarbon development and production assets. If such indicators exist, impairment, if any, is determined by comparing the carrying amounts to the recoverable amounts. The measurement of the recoverable amount involves a number of assumptions, including the timing, likelihood and amount of commercial production, further resource assessment plans and future revenue and costs expected from the asset, if any.

Impairment of Other Non-Financial Assets

We had property, plant and equipment aggregating \$58.3 million as at December 31, 2018, consisting mainly of a power plant and a natural gas processing facility. Impairment of our non-financial assets is evaluated at the CGU level. In testing for impairment, the recoverable amounts of the Company's CGUs are determined as the higher of their values in use and fair values less costs of disposal. In the absence of quoted market prices, the recoverable amount is based on estimates of future production rates, future product selling prices and costs, discount rates and other relevant assumptions. Increases in future costs and/or decreases in estimates of future production rates and product selling prices may result in a write-down of our property, plant and equipment.

Taxation

We are subject to tax in a number of jurisdictions and judgment is required in determining the worldwide provision for income taxes. Deferred income taxes are recognized for temporary differences using the liability method, with deferred income tax liabilities generally being provided for in full (except for taxable temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches where we are able to control

the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the temporary differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future) and deferred income tax assets being recognized to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profits will be available against which the temporary differences can be utilized.

Our operations and organization structures are complex, and related tax interpretations, regulations and legislation are continually changing. As a result, there are usually some tax matters in question that result in uncertain tax positions. We only recognize the income tax benefit of an uncertain tax position when it is probable that the ultimate determination of the tax treatment of the position will result in that benefit being realized.

The income tax filings of the companies in our group are subject to audit by taxation authorities in numerous jurisdictions. There are audits in progress and items under review, some of which may increase our income tax liabilities. In addition, the companies have filed appeals and have disputed certain issues. While the results of these items cannot be ascertained at this time, we believe that we have an adequate provision for income taxes based on available information.

We recognized deferred income tax assets of \$15.7 million as at December 31, 2018. In assessing the realizability of deferred income tax assets, our management considers whether it is probable that some portion or all of the deferred income tax assets will be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred income tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which temporary differences become deductible or before tax loss and tax credit carry-forwards expire. Our management considers the future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences, projected future taxable income, taxable income in prior years and tax planning strategies in making this assessment. Unrecognized deferred income tax assets are reassessed at the end of each reporting period.

We provide for future income tax liabilities in respect of uncertain tax positions where additional income tax may become payable in future periods and such provisions are based on our management's assessment of exposure. We did not recognize the full deferred tax liability on taxable temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches where we are able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the temporary differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future. We may change our investment decision in the normal course of our business, thus resulting in additional income tax liabilities.

Contingencies

Pursuant to IAS 37, *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*, we do not recognize a contingent liability. By their nature, contingencies will only be resolved when one or more future events occur or fail to occur. The assessment of contingencies inherently involves the exercise of significant judgment and estimates of the outcome of future events. If it becomes probable that an outflow of future economic benefits will be required for an item previously accounted for as a contingent liability, an accrual or a provision is recognized in the consolidated financial statements of the period in which the change in probability occurs. See Note 26 to our audited annual consolidated financial statements for further information.

New Standards and Interpretations Not Yet Adopted

IFRS 16, *Leases*, referred to as "IFRS 16", issued in January 2016, introduces a single on-balance sheet model of accounting for leases by lessees under a model that eliminates the distinction between operating and finance leases. Lessor accounting remains largely unchanged and the distinction between operating and finance leases is retained. IFRS 16 supersedes IAS 17, *Leases* and its related interpretations and management will adopt IFRS 16 for annual reporting periods beginning on January 1, 2019 and our management has decided to adopt IFRS 16 for annual reporting periods beginning on January 1, 2019. Our management concluded that the impacts of IFRS 16 on our consolidated financial statements as of January 1, 2019 would be a debit of \$2.9 million to the right-of-use assets with credits of \$0.8 million and \$2.1 million, respectively, to the current and long-term lease payables.

In December 2017, *Annual Improvements to IFRS Standards 2015-2017 Cycle* amended paragraph 14 of IAS 23, *Borrowing Costs*. The amendments clarify that the capitalization rate to the expenditures on a qualifying asset shall be the weighted average of the borrowing costs applicable to the borrowings of the entity that are outstanding during the period, and an entity shall exclude from this calculation borrowing costs applicable to borrowings made specifically for the purpose of obtaining the qualifying asset until substantially all the activities necessary to prepare that asset for its intended use or sale are complete. We will apply these amendments for annual reporting periods beginning January 1, 2019 and our management concluded that there will be no material impacts on our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2017, the IASB issued IFRIC 23 *Uncertainty over Income Tax Treatments*, referred to as “IFRIC 23”. IFRIC 23 aims to reduce diversity in how companies recognize and measure a tax liability or tax asset when there is uncertainty over income tax treatments. We will apply IFRIC 23 for annual reporting periods beginning January 1, 2019 and management concluded that there will be no material impacts on our consolidated financial statements.

In October 2018, IASB issued amendments to its definition of material to make it easier for companies to make materiality judgements. The updated definition amends IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, and IAS 8, *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. The amendments clarify the definition of material and how it should be applied and ensure that the definition of material is consistent across all IFRS standards. The changes are effective from January 1, 2020, but companies can decide to apply them earlier. Our management is assessing its impacts on our financial statement presentation.

Trend Information

For a discussion of trends relating to revenue derived from our royalty interest, please see “*Item 4: Information on the Company — B. Business Overview — Business Segments — Merchant Banking*”.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We do not have any off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenue or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that are material to investors.

In the normal course of our merchant banking activities, we issue guarantees to our trade and financing partners in order to secure financing facilities. Upon the use or drawdown of the underlying financing facilities, the financing facilities are recorded as liabilities on the consolidated statement of financial position such as short-term bank borrowings or debt. Accordingly, the issued guarantees relating to such financing facilities that are used or drawn are not considered contingent liabilities or off-balance sheet transactions. As at December 31, 2018, we had no unrecorded contingent liabilities relating to outstanding guarantees issued to our trade and financing partners in the normal course of our merchant banking activities.

Safe Harbor

The safe harbor provided in Section 27A of the *Securities Act of 1933*, as amended, and Section 21E of the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, as amended, applies to forward-looking information provided under “*Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements*” and “*Liquidity and Capital Resources — Contractual Obligations*”.

ITEM 6: DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYEES

A. Directors and Senior Management

We have no arrangement or understanding with major shareholders, customers, suppliers or others pursuant to which any of our directors or officers was selected as a director or officer. Each director holds office until the next annual general meeting of our shareholders or until his or her successor is elected or appointed unless such office is earlier vacated in accordance with our memorandum and articles of association, referred to as the “Articles”, or with the provisions of the Cayman Act. The following table sets forth the names of each of our directors and executive officers as at the date hereof:

Name (Age)	Present Position	Date of Commencement of Office with our Company
Michael J. Smith (71)	Chairman, Managing Director, President, Chief Executive Officer and Director	2017
Samuel Morrow (34) ⁽¹⁾	Deputy Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer	2017
Dr. Shuming Zhao (67) ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾⁽⁴⁾	Director	2017
Indrajit Chatterjee (73) ⁽³⁾⁽⁴⁾	Director	2017
Silke S. Stenger (51) ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾⁽⁴⁾	Director	2017
Friedrich Hondl (58) ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	Director	2017
Jochen Dümler (64) ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾⁽³⁾	Director	2017

Notes:

- (1) Member of the Risk Committee.
- (2) Member of the Audit Committee.
- (3) Member of the Compensation Committee.
- (4) Member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

Michael J. Smith — Managing Director, President and Chief Executive Officer

Mr. Smith is the Managing Director, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company and has held such positions since June 2017. Mr. Smith has served as a director and in executive positions of various publicly traded and private companies. Mr. Smith has experience in corporate finance and restructuring.

Samuel Morrow — Deputy Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

Mr. Morrow has been our Deputy Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer since June 2017. Mr. Morrow is a Chartered Financial Analyst. Prior thereto, Mr. Morrow was previously Vice President of Tanaka Capital Management and Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and Chief Operating Officer of the Tanaka Growth Fund. Mr. Morrow is a graduate of St. Lawrence University in New York.

Dr. Shuming Zhao — Director

Dr. Zhao is a Senior Distinguished Professor and Honorary Dean of the School of Business at Nanjing University, the People’s Republic of China. He serves as President of the International Association of Chinese Management Research (IACMR, Third Term), Vice President of the Chinese Academy of Management, President for Jiangsu Provincial Association of Human Resource Management, and Vice President of Jiangsu Provincial Association of Business Management and Entrepreneurs. Since 1994, Dr. Zhao has acted as management consultant for several Chinese and international firms. Dr. Zhao is also a director of Daqo New Energy Corp. (China) and JSTI Group (China) Ltd. Dr. Zhao has successfully organized and held nine international symposia on multinational business management. Since 1997, Dr. Zhao has been a visiting professor at the Marshall School of Business, University of Southern California, USA, the College of Business, University of Missouri-St. Louis, USA and Drucker Graduate School of Management, Claremont Graduate University, USA. Dr. Zhao has lectured in countries including the United States, Canada, Japan, Singapore, South Korea, the United Kingdom, Germany, the Netherlands, Portugal and Australia.

Indrajit Chatterjee — Director

Mr. Chatterjee is a retired businessman and formerly was responsible for marketing with the Transportation Systems Division of General Electric for India. Mr. Chatterjee is experienced in dealing with Indian governmental issues. He is an Executive Committee member of the Indian National Trust for Art and Cultural Heritage, which was founded in 1984 in New Delhi with the vision to spearhead heritage awareness and conservation in India.

Silke S. Stenger — Director

Ms. Stenger is an independent business consultant and business coach, with experience in the automotive, plant engineering and cement, franchising and consulting industries. She was a former director of KHD Humboldt Wedag International AG. Ms. Stenger was the Chief Financial Officer of Management One Human Capital Consultants Limited and Head of Investor Relations and authorized representative (*Prokurist*) with KIoidl & Cie Holding AG. She holds a Masters of Science in Industrial and Communications Psychology from FH Wien University of Applied Sciences of WKW in Vienna, Austria and is a certified controller (German Chamber of Commerce IHK) and IFRS accountant, specializing in corporate governance and *Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002* compliance. Furthermore, she is a business coach by training.

Friedrich Hondl — Director

Mr. Hondl has over 30 years of management experience in the European banking industry and has held several management positions with international banks, including Erste Group Bank, UniCredit and Deutsche Bank, where he was responsible for the international relationship business. Since 2018, he has been the Managing Partner of AMM Prime Management GmbH. From 2013 to 2015, he was the head of Erste Group Bank AG's Large Corporate International Division and from 2009 to 2012 he was the head of International Corporate Relationship Management of UniCredit Bank Austria AG. He also served as chairman of the supervisory board of Intermarket Bank AG from 2014 to 2015 and from 2010 to 2012 was a member of the supervisory board of Oesterreichische Kontrollbank AG (OeKB). OeKB acts as Austria's Export Credit Agency (ECA) on behalf of the Austrian government and specifically the Federal Ministry of Finance. It is a public and a private export insurer and financial institution. Within this group is the Austrian development bank. As an ECA, OeKB supports corporations financially in their export businesses and protects the business activities of Austrian companies abroad by means of export guarantees, investment guarantees and loan guarantees. Mr. Hondl has also served as a board member of a private foundation since 2007.

Jochen Dümler — Director

Mr. Dümler was the President and Chief Executive Officer of Euler Hermes North America from 2010 to 2015. From 2002 to 2010, Mr. Dümler was a member of the Board of Management of Euler Hermes Kreditversicherung AG and, from 1995 to 2002, he was a member of the Board of Management of PRISMA Kreditversicherung AG. Mr. Dümler is a member of the German-American Chamber of Commerce (New York City), a member of the German Executive Roundtable (Washington, D.C.) and a board member of the German-American Partnership Program.

There are no family relationships among any of our directors and executive officers.

B. Compensation

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, we paid an aggregate of approximately \$1.2 million in cash compensation to our directors and officers, excluding directors' fees. No other funds were set aside or accrued by our company during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 to provide pension, retirement or similar benefits for our directors or officers pursuant to any existing plan provided or contributed to by us.

Executive Officers

The following table provides a summary of compensation paid by us during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 to our executive officers:

Name and Principal Position	Salary (\$)	Share- based awards (\$)	Option- based awards (\$)	Non-equity incentive compensation plan compensation (\$) ⁽¹⁾		Pension value (\$)	All other compensation (\$)	Total compensation (\$)
				Annual incentive plans	Long- term incentive plans			
Michael J. Smith Chairman, Managing Director, President and Chief Executive Officer	543,429	—	—	—	—	—	280,615 ⁽²⁾	824,044
Samuel Morrow Chief Financial Officer and Deputy Chief Executive Officer	244,918	—	—	—	—	—	142,217 ⁽³⁾	387,135

Notes:

- (1) All awards under MFC's non-equity incentive compensation plans are paid during the financial year they were earned.
- (2) Consists of housing allowances and expenses.
- (3) Consists of medical and other customary perquisites.

For the purposes of the above table, compensation amounts were translated to Canadian dollars at the applicable exchange rate at the date of the transaction or, for practical reasons, the average exchange rates for the applicable periods, when they approximate the exchange rates as at the date of the transactions.

Directors' Compensation

The following table provides a summary of compensation paid by us to, or earned by, the directors of our company during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018:

Director Compensation Table

Name	Fees Earned (\$)	Share- based awards (\$)	Option- based awards (\$)	Non-equity incentive plan compensation (\$)	Pension value (\$)	All other compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Michael J. Smith ⁽¹⁾	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Gerardo Cortina ⁽²⁾	—	—	—	—	—	33,656 ⁽³⁾	33,656
Dr. Shuming Zhao	102,779	—	—	—	—	—	102,779
Indrajit Chatterjee	96,184	—	—	—	—	—	96,184
Silke S. Stenger	150,528	—	—	—	—	—	150,528
Friedrich Hondl	97,191	—	—	—	—	—	97,191
Jochen Dümmler	147,688	—	—	—	—	—	147,688

Notes:

- (1) Compensation provided to Mr. Smith, in his capacity as managing director is disclosed in the table above under the heading "Executive Officers".
- (2) Mr. Cortina retired from our board on May 15, 2018.
- (3) Consisted of salary payments.

A total of \$1.8 million (excluding non-cash option-based awards) was paid to our directors for services rendered as directors (including as directors of our subsidiaries), or for committee participation or assignments, during our most recently completed financial year. Our directors are each paid an annual fee of US\$25,000 and US\$2,500 for each director's meeting attended as well as additional fees, as applicable, for their respective participation on our committees. We also reimburse our directors and officers for expenses incurred in connection with their services as directors and officers.

Pension Plan Benefits

As of December 31, 2018, we did not have any defined benefit, defined contribution or deferred compensation plans for any of our senior officers or directors.

C. Board Practices

Board of Directors

Our Articles provide that the number of directors shall be the greater of three and the number most recently established by the directors. Our directors have currently fixed the size of our board at seven directors.

Pursuant to our Articles, each of our directors holds office until the expiration of his term and until his successor has been elected or qualified. At every annual general meeting of our shareholders, shareholders entitled to vote for the election of directors must, by ordinary resolution, elect the directors. There is no mandatory retirement age for our directors and our directors are not required to own securities of our company in order to serve as directors.

Our Articles do not restrict a director's power to vote on a proposal, arrangement or contract in which the director is materially interested, vote on compensation to themselves or any other members of their body in the absence of an independent quorum or exercise borrowing powers.

Our board is currently comprised of Michael J. Smith, Indrajit Chatterjee, Shuming Zhao, Silke S. Stenger, Friedrich Hondl and Jochen Dümler.

Other than as discussed elsewhere herein, there are no service contracts between our company and any of our directors providing for benefits upon termination of employment.

Committees of the Board of Directors

Our board of directors has established an Audit Committee. Our Audit Committee currently consists of Silke S. Stenger, Dr. Shuming Zhao, Friedrich Hondl and Jochen Dümler. The Audit Committee operates pursuant to a charter adopted by our board of directors on July 12, 2017, a copy of which is available online at our website at www.mfcbancorp.com. The Audit Committee is appointed by and generally acts on behalf of the board of directors. The Audit Committee is responsible primarily for monitoring: (i) the integrity of our financial statements; (ii) compliance with legal and regulatory requirements; (iii) the independence, qualifications and performance of our independent auditors; and (iv) the performance and structure of our internal audit function. The Audit Committee also reviews and approves our hiring policies, establishes our procedures for dealing with complaints, oversees our financial reporting processes and consults with management and our independent auditors on matters related to our annual audit and internal controls, published financial statements, risk assessment and risk management, accounting principles and auditing procedures being applied.

Our board of directors has established a Compensation Committee. Our Compensation Committee currently consists of Indrajit Chatterjee, Silke S. Stenger, Dr. Shuming Zhao and Jochen Dümler. Our Compensation Committee operates pursuant to a charter adopted by our board of directors on July 12, 2017, a copy of which is available online at our website at www.mfcbancorp.com. The Compensation Committee is appointed and generally acts on behalf of the board of directors. The Compensation Committee is responsible for reviewing our board compensation practices and our selection, retention and remuneration arrangements for our executive officers and employees and reviewing and approving our Chief Executive Officer's compensation in light of our corporate goals and objectives. Except for plans that are, in accordance with their terms or as required by law, administered by our board of directors or another particularly designated group, the Compensation Committee also administers and implements all of our incentive compensation plans and equity-based compensation plans. The Compensation Committee also recommends changes or additions to those plans, monitors our succession planning processes and reports to our board of directors on other compensation matters. Our Chief Executive Officer does not vote upon or participate in the deliberations regarding his compensation.

Our board of directors has established a Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee currently consists of Indrajit Chatterjee, Silke S. Stenger and Dr. Shuming Zhao. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee operates pursuant to a charter adopted by our board of directors on July 12, 2017, a copy of which is available online at our website at www.mfcbancorp.com. The primary function of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is to assist our board of directors in developing our Corporate Governance Guidelines and monitor the board and management's performance against the defined approach. The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is also responsible for evaluating the board and board

committees' structure and size and the independence of existing and prospective directors, identifying and reporting on candidates to be nominated to our board of directors, reporting on the board's annual performance and overseeing our process for providing information to the board.

Our board of directors has established a Risk Committee. Our Risk Committee currently consists of Jochen Dümler, Friedrich Hondl and Samuel Morrow. The Risk Committee reviews and reports to our board of directors respecting our business risks and risk mitigation strategies.

D. Employees

At December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, we employed approximately 216, 230 and 448 people, respectively. The decrease in 2018 was as a result of our strategy to exit certain product lines and geographies.

E. Share Ownership

There were 12,534,801 Common Shares, 450,000 stock options and no share purchase warrants issued and outstanding as of April 26, 2019. Of the Common Shares and stock options issued and outstanding on that date, our directors and senior officers, who served in such positions at any time during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, beneficially owned the following Common Shares and held the following stock options:

Name and principal position	Common Shares beneficially owned (#)	Percentage of total Common Shares outstanding (%)	Stock options held (#)
Michael J. Smith Chairman, Managing Director, President and Chief Executive Officer and Director	109,067	0.9%	12,500 ⁽¹⁾
Dr. Shuming Zhao Director	—	—	12,000 ⁽¹⁾
Indrajit Chatterjee Director	—	—	12,000 ⁽¹⁾
Silke S. Stenger Director	—	—	12,000 ⁽¹⁾
Friedrich Hondl Director	—	—	12,000 ⁽¹⁾
Jochen Dümler Director	—	—	12,000 ⁽¹⁾
Samuel Morrow Deputy Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer	8,478	—*	60,000 ⁽¹⁾

Note:

(1) The options are exercisable at a price of US\$8.76 per Common Share and expire on December 1, 2027.

* Less than 0.1%.

2017 Equity Incentive Plan

The 2017 Equity Incentive Plan, referred to as the "Incentive Plan", was adopted by the Company on July 14, 2017.

Pursuant to the terms of the Incentive Plan, our board of directors, our Compensation Committee or such other committee as is appointed by our board of directors to administer the Incentive Plan, may grant stock options, restricted stock rights, restricted stock, performance share awards, performance share units and stock appreciation rights under the Incentive Plan, establish the terms and conditions for those awards, construe and interpret the Incentive Plan and establish the rules for the Incentive Plan's administration. Such awards may be granted to employees, non-employee directors, officers or consultants of ours or any affiliate or any person to whom an offer of employment with us or any affiliate is extended. Such committee has the authority to determine which employees, non-employee directors, officers, consultants and prospective employees should receive such awards.

Subject to adjustment for changes in capitalization, the total number of Common Shares subject to all awards under the Incentive Plan is 575,403 Common Shares.

The maximum number of Common Shares which may be issued as incentive stock options (being stock options intended to meet the requirements of an "incentive stock option" under the U.S. Internal Revenue

Code) under the Incentive Plan is limited to 400,000. Further, the maximum number of Common Shares that may be granted to any one participant in the Incentive Plan, who is a Covered Employee (as defined in the Incentive Plan) during the fiscal year where such participant's employment commences, shall be 80,000 and 70,000 for all other fiscal years.

In addition, the aggregate fair value of Awards (as defined in the Incentive Plan) granted to any one non-employee director cannot exceed \$100,000 in any one year, and the aggregate number of securities issuable to all non-employee directors cannot exceed 1% of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Shares.

In 2018, 20,000 options were cancelled under the Incentive Plan and 20,000 options were issued to non-executive employees thereunder.

As at December 31, 2018 and the date hereof, 450,000 awards were outstanding under the Incentive Plan and 125,403 awards were available for future awards under the Incentive Plan.

ITEM 7: MAJOR SHAREHOLDERS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

A. Major Shareholders

There were 12,534,801 Common Shares issued and outstanding as of April 26, 2019. The following table sets forth, as of the date hereof, persons known to us to be the beneficial owner of more than five percent (5%) of our Common Shares:

Name	Amount Owned	Percent of Class ⁽¹⁾
Peter Kellogg, group ⁽²⁾	4,132,480	33.0%
Lloyd Miller, III ⁽³⁾	1,862,523	14.9%
Nantahala Capital Management, LLC ⁽⁴⁾	846,555	6.8%

Notes:

- (1) Based on 12,534,801 Common Shares issued and outstanding on April 26, 2019.
- (2) Mr. Kellogg controls 2,681,000 of our Common Shares through IAT Reinsurance Company Ltd., referred to as "IAT". In his public filings, Mr. Kellogg disclaims beneficial ownership of all of the shares, or approximately 21.4% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares, owned by IAT. In addition, in his public filings, Mr. Kellogg disclaims beneficial ownership of 240,000 Common Shares owned by his wife, Cynthia Kellogg.
- (3) As disclosed in a Schedule 13G dated January 23, 2018, Neil Subin succeeded to the position of President and Manager of Milfam, LLC which serves as manager, general partner or investment advisor of a number of entities formerly managed by the late Lloyd Miller, III. He also serves as trustee of a number of Miller family trusts, controls such shares through a number of trusts and wholly-owned corporations. In his public filings, Mr. Subin discloses that he exercises sole dispositive and voting control over 1,740,429 of such shares and shared dispositive and voting control over 122,094 of such shares. Includes 170,802 Common Shares owned by Alimco Financial Corporation. In a Schedule 13G/A filed by Mr. Subin on February 13, 2019, it is disclosed that certain entities held by or for the benefit of the family of Mr. Miller hold approximately 85% of the outstanding shares of common stock of Alimco Financial Corporation and both Mr. Subin and Alimco Financial Corporation disclaim beneficial ownership of the securities reported by the other reporting person.
- (4) Based on Schedule 13G filed on February 14, 2019 jointly with Nantahala Capital Management, LLC, Wilmot B. Harkey and Daniel Mack.

As of April 26, 2019, there were 12,534,801 Common Shares issued and outstanding held by 276 registered shareholders. Of those Common Shares issued and outstanding, 12,530,186 Common Shares were registered in the United States (262 registered shareholders).

The voting rights of our major shareholders do not differ from the voting rights of holders of our shares who are not major shareholders.

Peter Kellogg may be considered to control our company as a result of, among other things, his ownership of approximately 33.0% of our Common Shares.

There are no arrangements known to us, the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in the control of our company.

B. Related Party Transactions

Other than as disclosed herein, to the best of our knowledge, in the year ended December 31, 2018, there were no material transactions or loans between our company and: (a) enterprises that directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries control or are controlled by, or are under common control with, our company; (b) associates; (c) individuals owning, directly or indirectly, an interest in the voting power of our

company that gives them significant influence over our company, and close members of any such individual's family; (d) key management personnel of our company, including directors and senior management of our company and close members of such individuals' families; or (e) enterprises in which a substantial interest in the voting power is owned, directly or indirectly, by any person described in (c) or (d) or over which such a person is able to exercise significant influence.

In the normal course of operations, we enter into transactions with related parties, which include, among others, affiliates whereby we have a significant equity interest (10% or more) in the affiliates or have the ability to influence the affiliates' or our operating and financing policies through significant shareholding, representation on the board of directors, corporate charter and/or bylaws. The affiliates also include certain of our directors, President and Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Chief Operating Officer and their close family members.

In 2018, we received dividends of \$0.2 million from an entity in which we have a significant equity interest.

In 2017, in connection with our previously announced strategy to re-allocate capital and resources and exit certain products and geographies, we sold the shares of a non-core Latin America focused commodities trading subsidiary to a company controlled by our former President. Under the transaction, we received total consideration approximately equal to net asset value, including 90,000 Common Shares on a post-Arrangement basis at a price per share of US\$9.20 and the release of any further obligations to issue shares in connection with a prior share purchase agreement between the parties.

C. Interests of Experts and Counsel

Not applicable.

ITEM 8: FINANCIAL INFORMATION

A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information

Our consolidated financial statements have been prepared in compliance with IFRS. Please see "*Item 18: Financial Statements*".

Legal Proceedings

We are subject to routine litigation incidental to our business and are named from time to time as a defendant in various legal actions arising in connection with our activities, certain of which may include large claims for punitive damages. Further, due to the size, complexity and nature of our operations, various legal and tax matters are outstanding from time to time, including audits and reassessments including relating to our former affiliates, and litigation related thereto. Currently, based upon information available to us, we do not believe any such matters would have a material adverse effect upon our financial condition or results of operations. However, due to the inherent uncertainty of litigation, we cannot provide certainty as to their outcome. If our current evaluations are materially incorrect or if we are unable to resolve any of these matters favorably, there may be a material adverse impact on our financial performance, cash flows or results of operations. Please see Note 26 to our audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 for further information.

Dividend Distributions

We did not declare or pay any cash dividends to our shareholders in 2018. The actual timing, payment and amount of dividends paid on our Common Shares is determined by our board of directors, based upon considerations such as our cash flow, results of operations and financial condition, the need for funds to finance ongoing operations and such other business considerations as our board of directors considers relevant.

B. Significant Changes

Except as disclosed elsewhere in this annual report, we have not experienced any significant changes since the date of our audited consolidated financial statements included in this annual report.

ITEM 9: THE OFFER AND LISTING

A. Offer and Listing Details

Our Common Shares are quoted on the New York Stock Exchange, referred to as the “NYSE”, currently under the symbol “MFCB”.

The transfer of our Common Shares is managed by our transfer agent, Computershare, 480 Washington Boulevard, Jersey City, NJ 07310 (Tel: 201-680-5258; Fax: 201-680-4604).

B. Plan of Distribution

Not applicable.

C. Markets

See “— A. Offer and Listing Details”.

D. Selling Shareholders

Not applicable.

E. Dilution

Not applicable.

F. Expenses of the Issue

Not applicable.

ITEM 10: ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

A. Share Capital

Not applicable.

B. Memorandum and Articles of Association

We are an exempted company organized under the Cayman Act. Our registered office is located at 4th Floor, Harbour Place, 103 South Church Street, Grand Cayman, Cayman Islands. Pursuant to Section 4 of our Articles, the objects for which our company is established are unrestricted and we have full power and authority to carry out any object not prohibited by the Cayman Act, as amended from time to time, or any other law of the Cayman Islands.

The following are summaries of material provisions of our Articles insofar as they relate to our Common Shares.

Board of Directors

Please see “Item 6: Directors, Senior Management and Employees — C. Board Practices”.

Common Shares

General. Our authorized capital consists of US\$450,000 divided into 300,000,000 Common Shares of US\$0.001 par value each and 150,000,000 preference shares divided into US\$0.001 par value each. No preference shares were issued and outstanding as of the date hereof. There are no limitations imposed by our Articles on the rights of non-resident or foreign shareholders to hold or exercise voting rights on our shares. In addition, there are no provisions in our Articles governing the ownership threshold above which shareholder ownership must be disclosed.

Dividends. Holders of our Common Shares may receive dividends when, as and if declared by our board of directors, subject to the preferential rights of any preference shares. Under the Cayman Act, dividends may be declared and paid only out of funds legally available therefor, namely out of either profit or our share premium account, and provided further that a dividend may not be paid if it would result in our company being unable to pay its debts as they fall due in the ordinary course of business. Our Articles provide that our directors may declare and pay a distribution in money or by distribution of specific assets.

Voting. Holders of our Common Shares are entitled to receive notice of and to attend all general meetings of shareholders or separate meetings of holders of Common Shares and are entitled to one vote per share at any such meeting.

A quorum required for a general meeting of shareholders consists of at least two shareholders present or by proxy, representing not less than 20% of the total voting power entitled to vote on the resolutions to be considered at a meeting, unless only one shareholder is entitled to vote on such resolutions in which case the quorum required shall be only the one shareholder.

An ordinary resolution to be passed by the shareholders requires the affirmative vote of a simple majority of the votes cast by those shareholders entitled to vote who are present in person or by proxy at a general meeting. Holders of our Common Shares may, among other things, divide or consolidate their shares by ordinary resolution. In general and subject to applicable law, all matters will be determined by a majority of votes cast other than fundamental changes with respect to our company. Various extraordinary corporate transactions including any merger, amalgamation, continuance to another jurisdiction, voluntary winding-up by the court, amendment to the Articles, change of company name or removal of a director must be approved by the shareholders by way of a special resolution. A special resolution is a resolution passed by a majority of not less than two-thirds of such shareholders who, being entitled to do so, vote in person or by proxy at a general meeting of the Company, or approved in writing by all of the shareholders entitled to vote at a general meeting of the Company. Under the Cayman Act, there is no specific requirement to obtain shareholder approval in connection with the sale, lease or exchange of all, or substantially all, of a corporation's property.

General Meetings of Shareholders and Shareholder Proposals. Our Articles provide that we may hold an annual general meeting in each year and shall specify the meeting as such with notices calling it, and the annual general meeting shall be held at such time and place as may be determined by our directors. Our directors may convene a meeting of our shareholders with at least 10 days' prior notice.

Cayman Islands exempted companies are not required by the Cayman Act to call annual general meetings of shareholders. Our Articles provide that so long as the Company's shares are listed on the NYSE, we shall hold annual general meetings as required under the applicable rules and regulations of the NYSE.

Cayman Islands law provides shareholders with only limited rights to requisition a general meeting, and does not provide shareholders with any right to put any proposal before a general meeting. However, these rights may be provided in a company's articles of association. Our Articles allow shareholders representing in aggregate 20% or more of the voting rights in respect of the matter for which the meeting is requisitioned, to be held within four months of receipt of the requisition. As an exempted Cayman Islands company, we are not obliged under the Cayman Act to call shareholders' annual general meetings. Under our Articles, directors may be removed by special resolution of our shareholders.

Directors' Power to Issue Shares. Our Articles authorize our board of directors to issue additional Common Shares from time to time as our board shall determine, to the extent of available authorized but unissued shares. Our board of directors may also issue preference shares from time to time in one or more classes or series, each of such class or series to have such voting powers (full or limited or without voting powers) designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights and qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof as are stated and expressed, or in any resolution providing for the issue of such class or series adopted by our board.

Our board of directors may also approve the issuance of options, rights or warrants that are exercisable into our shares for such consideration and on such terms as the board may determine.

Variation of Rights. The rights attached to any class or series of our shares (unless otherwise provided by the terms of issue of the shares of that class or series), whether or not our company is being wound-up, may only be varied with the consent in writing of the holders of a majority of the issued shares of that class or series or with the sanction of a special resolution passed at a separate meeting of the holders of the shares of that class or series.

Liquidation. The holders of our Common Shares have the right on the winding up, liquidation or dissolution of the Company to participate in the surplus assets of the Company, subject to the rights of any issued and outstanding preference shares.

Redemption, Repurchase and Surrender. We may issue shares on terms that such shares are subject to redemption, at our option or at the option of the holders thereof, on such terms and in such manner as may be determined, before the issue of such shares, by our board of directors or by a special resolution of

our shareholders. We may also repurchase any of our shares provided that the manner and terms of such purchase have been approved by our board of directors or are otherwise authorized by our Articles. Under the Cayman Act, the redemption or purchase of any of our shares may be paid out of our profits or out of the proceeds of a fresh issue of shares made for the purpose of such redemption or repurchase, or out of capital (including share premium account and capital redemption reserve) if we can, immediately following such payment, pay our debts as they fall due in the ordinary course of business. In addition, under the Cayman Act, no such share may be redeemed or repurchased: (a) unless it is fully paid up; (b) if such redemption or repurchase would result in there being no shares outstanding; or (c) if the Company has commenced liquidation.

Anti-Takeover Provisions. Our Articles contain certain provisions that would have an effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of our company, including provisions that:

- authorize our directors to issue preference shares in one or more classes or series and to designate the price, rights, preferences, rights and restrictions of such preference shares without any further vote or action by our shareholders;
- limit the ability of shareholders to requisition and convene general meetings of shareholders; and
- restrict the nomination of directors without advance notice. In the case of an annual meeting, notice must be given to us not less than 30 nor more than 65 days prior to the date of such meeting; provided that if the meeting is to be held on a date that is less than 50 days after the date on which the first public announcement of the date of such meeting was made, notice may be given no later than the close of business on the 10th day following such announcement. In the case of a special meeting called for the purpose of electing directors that is not also an annual meeting, notice must be provided to us no later than the close of business on the 15th day following the day on which the first public announcement of the date of such special meeting was made. Additionally, our Articles contain a provision requiring a minimum threshold to requisition a special meeting. Such restrictions may make it more difficult to effect changes to our management.

However, under the Cayman Act and applicable Cayman laws, our directors may only exercise the rights and powers granted to them under our Articles for a proper purpose and for what they believe in good faith to be in the best interests of our company.

Calls on Shares. Our board of directors may from time to time make calls upon shareholders for any amounts unpaid on their shares. The shares that have been called upon and remain unpaid are subject to forfeiture. All of our Common Shares are fully paid.

Exempted Company. We are an exempted company with limited liability under the Cayman Act. The Cayman Act distinguishes between ordinary resident companies and exempted companies. Any company that is registered in the Cayman Islands but conducts business mainly outside of the Cayman Islands may apply to be registered as an exempted company. Unlike ordinary resident companies, among other things, an exempted company does not have to file an annual return of its shareholders with the Registrar of Companies, is not required to have its register of members open to inspection, does not have to hold an annual general meeting, may issue no par value, negotiable or bearer shares and may register by way of continuation in another jurisdiction and be deregistered in the Cayman Islands.

C. Material Contracts

There have been no material contracts outside of the ordinary course of business to which we were a party in the last two years.

D. Exchange Controls

There are no exchange control regulations or currency restrictions in the Cayman Islands. Under Cayman Islands law, there are no restrictions on the export or import of capital, including foreign exchange controls or restrictions that affect the remittance of dividends, interest or other payments to non-resident holders of our Common Shares. Please see “*E. Taxation — Cayman Islands Taxation*” for further information.

The Bank is subject to regulations and restrictions imposed in Europe and Malta. Please see “*Item 3: Key Information — D. Risk Factors — Risk Factors Relating to Our Business*” for further information.

E. Taxation

The following is a general summary of certain Cayman Islands and United States federal income tax consequences relevant to an investment in our Common Shares. The discussion is not intended to be, nor should it be construed as, legal or tax advice to any particular prospective purchaser. The discussion is based on laws and relevant interpretations thereof in effect as of the date of this annual report, all of which are subject to change or different interpretations, possibly with retroactive effect. The discussion does not address U.S. state or local tax laws, or tax laws of jurisdictions other than the Cayman Islands and the United States. You should consult your own tax advisors with respect to the consequences of acquisition, ownership and disposition of our Common Shares.

Cayman Islands Taxation

The Cayman Islands currently levies no taxes on individuals or corporations based upon profits, income, gains or appreciation and there is no taxation in the nature of inheritance tax or estate duty or withholding tax applicable to us or to any holder of our Common Shares. There are no other taxes likely to be material to us levied by the Government of the Cayman Islands except for stamp duties which may be applicable on instruments executed in, or after execution brought within, the jurisdiction of the Cayman Islands. No stamp duty is payable in the Cayman Islands on the issue of shares by, or any transfers of shares of, Cayman Islands companies (except those which hold interests in land in the Cayman Islands). The Cayman Islands is not party to any double tax treaties that are applicable to any payments made to or by our company. There are no exchange control regulations or currency restrictions in the Cayman Islands.

Payments of dividends and capital in respect of our Common Shares will not be subject to taxation in the Cayman Islands and no withholding will be required on the payment of a dividend or capital to any holder of our Common Shares, as the case may be, nor will gains derived from the disposal of our Common Shares be subject to Cayman Islands income or corporation tax.

Material United States Federal Income Tax Consequences

The following is a discussion of certain United States federal income tax matters under current law, generally applicable to a U.S. Holder (as defined below) of our Common Shares who holds such shares as capital assets. This discussion does not address all aspects of United States federal income tax matters and does not address consequences particular to persons subject to certain special provisions of United States federal income tax law such as those described below. In addition, this discussion does not cover any state, local or foreign tax consequences.

The following discussion is based upon the *Internal Revenue Code of 1986*, as amended, referred to as the “Code”, Treasury Regulations published by the Internal Revenue Service, referred to as the “IRS”, rulings, published administrative positions of the IRS and court decisions that are currently applicable, any or all of which could be materially and adversely changed, possibly on a retroactive basis, at any time. In addition, this discussion does not consider the potential effects, both adverse and beneficial, of any recently proposed legislation that, if enacted, could be applied, possibly on a retroactive basis, at any time. No assurance can be given that the IRS will agree with the statements and conclusions herein, or will not take, or that a court will not adopt, a position contrary to any position taken herein.

The following discussion is for general information only and is not intended to be, nor should it be construed to be, legal, business or tax advice to any holder or prospective holder of our Common Shares and no opinion or representation with respect to the United States federal income tax consequences to any such holder or prospective holder is hereby made. Accordingly, holders and prospective holders of Common Shares are urged to consult their own tax advisors with respect to United States federal, state and local tax consequences of purchasing, owning and disposing of our Common Shares.

U.S. Holders

As used in this section, a “U.S. Holder” includes: (i) a holder of our Common Shares who is a citizen or resident of the United States; (ii) a corporation created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or of any political subdivision thereof, or any entity which is taxable as a United States corporation for United States tax purposes; (iii) an estate, the income of which is subject to United States federal income tax without regard to its source; or (iv) a trust if (1) a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (2) the trust has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a U.S. person.

This summary does not purport to address all material United States federal income tax consequences that may be relevant to a U.S. Holder and does not take into account the specific circumstances of any particular investors, some of which (such as tax-exempt entities, banks or other financial institutions, insurance companies, broker-dealers, traders in securities that elect to use a mark-to-market method of accounting for their securities holdings, regulated investment companies, real estate investment trusts, U.S. expatriates, investors liable for the alternative minimum tax, partnerships and other pass-through entities, investors that own or are treated as owning 10% or more of our Common Shares, investors that hold the Common Shares as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion or constructive sale transaction or other integrated transaction, and U.S. holders whose functional currency is not the United States dollar) may be subject to special tax rules. This summary does not address shareholders who acquired their shares through the exercise of employee stock options or otherwise as compensation.

If an entity that is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds our Common Shares, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner will generally depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partnerships holding our Common Shares and partners in such partnerships should consult their tax advisers as to the particular U.S. federal income tax consequences of owning and disposing of the Common Shares.

Distributions

The gross amount of a distribution paid to a U.S. Holder (including amounts withheld in respect of Canadian taxes) in respect of the Common Shares will be subject to United States federal income taxation as ordinary income to the extent paid out of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined under United States federal income tax principles. Such dividends will not be eligible for the dividends received deduction allowed to corporations. Distributions that are taxable dividends and that meet certain requirements will be “qualified dividend income” and will generally be taxed to U.S. Holders who are individuals at a maximum United States federal income tax rate of 20% (subject to the “Passive Foreign Investment Company” rules discussed below). Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits will be treated first as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of the U.S. Holder’s tax basis in the Common Shares and, to the extent in excess of such tax basis, will be treated as a gain from a sale or exchange of such shares.

Sale or Other Disposition of Common Shares

Subject to the “Passive Foreign Investment Company” rules discussed below, in general, upon a sale, exchange or other disposition of Common Shares, a U.S. Holder will generally recognize a capital gain or loss for United States federal income tax purposes in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized on the sale or other distribution and the U.S. Holder’s adjusted tax basis in such shares. Such gain or loss will be a United States source gain or loss and will be treated as a long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder’s holding period of the shares exceeds one year. If the U.S. Holder is an individual, any capital gain will generally be subject to United States federal income tax at preferential rates if specified minimum holding periods are met. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to significant limitations.

Foreign Tax Credit

Dividends paid by us generally will constitute income from non-U.S. sources and will be subject to various classification rules and other limitations for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes. Subject to generally applicable limitations under United States federal income tax law, withholding tax imposed on such dividends, if any, will be treated as a foreign income tax eligible for credit against a U.S. Holder’s United States federal income tax liability (or at a U.S. Holder’s election if it does not elect to claim a foreign tax credit for any foreign taxes paid during the taxable year, all foreign income taxes paid may instead be deducted in computing such U.S. Holder’s taxable income). There are significant and complex limitations which apply to the tax credit, among which are an ownership period requirement and the general limitation that the credit cannot exceed the proportionate share of the U.S. Holder’s United States federal income tax liability that the U.S. Holder’s foreign source income bears to his or its worldwide taxable income. In general, special rules will apply to the calculation of foreign tax credits in respect of dividend income that is subject to preferential rates of United States federal income tax. The availability of the foreign tax credit and the application of these complex limitations on the tax credit are fact specific and holders and prospective holders of our Common Shares should consult their own tax advisors regarding their individual circumstances.

Passive Foreign Investment Company

We do not believe that we are currently a passive foreign investment company, referred to as a “PFIC”. However, since PFIC status depends upon the composition of a corporation’s income and assets and the market value of its assets and shares from time to time, there is no assurance that we will not be considered a PFIC for any taxable year. If we were treated as a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. Holder held shares, we generally would continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to that U.S. Holder for all succeeding years during which the U.S. Holder holds the shares, even if we ceased to meet the threshold requirements for PFIC status, and certain adverse United States federal income tax consequences would apply to the U.S. Holder.

A non-U.S. corporation will be a PFIC for any taxable year in which either (i) 75% or more of its gross income consists of “passive income”, or (ii) 50% or more of the average quarterly value of its assets consist of assets that produce, or are held for the production of, “passive income”. For this purpose, subject to certain exceptions, passive income includes interest, dividends, rents, royalties, and gains from transactions in commodities. A non-U.S. corporation will be treated as owning its proportionate share of the assets and earning its proportionate share of the income of any other corporation in which it owns, directly or indirectly, more than 25% (by value) of the stock.

If we are treated as a PFIC for any taxable year, gains recognized by a U.S. Holder on a sale or other disposition of shares would be allocated ratably over the U.S. Holder’s holding period for the shares. The amount allocated to the taxable year of the sale or other exchange and to any year before we became a PFIC would be taxed as ordinary income. The amount allocated to each other taxable year would be subject to tax at the highest rate in effect for individuals or corporations, as applicable, and an interest charge would be imposed on the amount allocated to such taxable year. Further, any distribution in respect of shares in excess of 125% of the average of the annual distributions on shares received by the U.S. Holder during the preceding three years or the U.S. Holder’s holding period, whichever is shorter, would be subject to United States federal income taxation as described above. Certain elections might be available to U.S. Holders that may mitigate some of the adverse consequences resulting from PFIC status. However, regardless of whether such elections are made, dividends paid by a PFIC will not be “qualified dividend income” and will generally be taxed at the higher rates applicable to other items of ordinary income.

If a U.S. Holder owns shares during any year in which we are a PFIC, the holder generally must file an annual report containing such information as the U.S. Treasury may require on IRS Form 8621 (or any successor form) with respect to us, generally with the holder’s federal income tax return for that year.

U.S. Holders and prospective holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the potential application of the PFIC rules to their ownership of our Common Shares.

Medicare Tax

A U.S. Holder that is an individual or estate, or a trust that does not fall into a special class of trusts that is exempt from such tax, will be subject to a 3.8% tax on the lesser of (1) the U.S. Holder’s “net investment income” (or undistributed “net investment income” in the case of estates and trusts) for the relevant taxable year and (2) the excess of the U.S. Holder’s modified adjusted gross income for the taxable year over a certain threshold (which in the case of individuals will be between US\$125,000 and US\$250,000, depending on the individual’s circumstances). A holder’s net investment income will generally include its dividend income and its net gains from the disposition of securities, unless such dividend income or net gains are derived in the ordinary course of the conduct of a trade or business (other than a trade or business that consists of certain passive or trading activities). If you are a U.S. Holder that is an individual, estate or trust, you are urged to consult your own tax advisor regarding the applicability of this Medicare tax.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Under United States federal income tax law and the Treasury Regulations, certain categories of U.S. Holders must file information returns with respect to their investment in, or involvement in, a foreign corporation. For example, certain United States federal income tax return disclosure obligations (and related penalties) are generally imposed on U.S. Holders that hold certain specified foreign financial assets in excess of US\$50,000. The definition of specified foreign financial assets includes not only financial accounts maintained in foreign financial institutions, but also, unless held in accounts maintained by a financial institution, any stock or security issued by a non-U.S. person, any financial instrument or contract held for investment that has an issuer or counterparty other than a U.S. person and any interest in a foreign entity. U.S. Holders may be subject to these reporting requirements unless their Common Shares are held in

an account at a domestic financial institution. Penalties for failure to file certain of these information returns are substantial. U.S. Holders should consult with their own tax advisers regarding the requirements of filing information returns and, if applicable, filing obligations relating to the PFIC rules.

Dividends paid on, and proceeds from the sale or other taxable disposition of, our Common Shares to a U.S. Holder generally may be subject to United States federal information reporting requirements and may be subject to backup withholding (currently at the rate of 24%) unless the U.S. Holder provides an accurate taxpayer identification number or otherwise demonstrates that it is exempt. The amount of any backup withholding collected from a payment to a U.S. Holder will generally be allowed as a credit against the U.S. Holder's United States federal income tax liability and may entitle the U.S. Holder to a refund, provided that certain required information is timely submitted to the IRS. A non-U.S. holder generally will be exempt from these information reporting requirements and backup withholding tax but may be required to comply with certain certification and identification procedures in order to establish its eligibility for exemption.

F. Dividends and Paying Agents

Not applicable.

G. Statement by Experts

Not applicable.

H. Documents on Display

Documents and agreements concerning our company may be inspected at Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong, SAR China.

We file reports and other information with the Securities and Exchange Commission, referred to as the "SEC". The SEC maintains an Internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC. Our filings with the SEC are available to the public over the internet at such website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

I. Subsidiary Information

For a list of our significant wholly-owned direct and indirect subsidiaries and significant non-wholly-owned subsidiaries, please see "*Item 4: Information on the Company — C. Organizational Structure*".

ITEM 11: QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

We are exposed to various market risks from changes in interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates and equity prices that may affect our results of operations and financial condition and, consequently, our fair value. Generally, our management believes that our current financial assets and financial liabilities, due to their short-term nature, do not pose significant financial risks. We use various financial instruments to manage our exposure to various financial risks. The policies for controlling the risks associated with financial instruments include, but are not limited to, standardized company procedures and policies on matters such as hedging of risk exposures, avoidance of undue concentration of risk and requirements for collateral (including letters of credit) to mitigate credit risk. We have risk managers to perform audits and checking functions to ensure that company procedures and policies are complied with.

We use derivative instruments to manage certain exposures to commodity price and currency exchange rate risks. The use of derivative instruments depends on our management's perception of future economic events and developments. These types of derivatives are often very volatile, as they are highly leveraged, given that margin requirements are relatively low in proportion to their notional amounts.

Many of our strategies, including the use of derivative instruments and the types of derivative instruments selected by us, are based on historical trading patterns and correlations and our management's expectations of future events. However, these strategies may not be fully effective in all market environments or against all types of risks. Unexpected market developments may affect our risk management strategies during this time, and unanticipated developments could impact our risk management strategies in the future. If any of the variety of instruments and strategies we utilize are not effective, we may incur losses.

Please refer to Note 29 of our annual consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 for a qualitative and quantitative discussion of our exposure to market risks and the sensitivity analysis of interest rate, currency and other price risks at December 31, 2018.

ITEM 12: DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES OTHER THAN EQUITY SECURITIES

Not applicable.

PART II

ITEM 13: DEFAULTS, DIVIDEND ARREARAGES AND DELINQUENCIES

None.

ITEM 14: MATERIAL MODIFICATIONS TO RIGHTS OF SECURITY HOLDERS AND USE OF PROCEEDS

None.

ITEM 15: CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Disclosure controls and procedures are controls and other procedures that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our company's reports filed or submitted under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934* is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our company's reports filed under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934* is accumulated and communicated to management, including our company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

As required by Rule 13a-15 under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, we have carried out an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our company's disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period covered by this annual report on Form 20-F, being December 31, 2018. This evaluation was carried out by our Chief Executive Officer (being our principal executive officer) and Chief Financial Officer (being our principal financial officer). Based upon that evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures are effective.

Report of Management on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) or 13d-15(f) under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, as amended. Our internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of consolidated financial statements for external purposes in accordance with IFRS. Our internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that:

1. pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of our assets and our consolidated entities;
2. provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of the consolidated financial statements in accordance with IFRS and that receipts and expenditures of our company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and our directors; and
3. provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements.

Management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2018. In conducting this evaluation, management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework (2013)*.

Based on this evaluation, management concluded that, as of December 31, 2018, our internal control over financial reporting was effective.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the year ended December 31, 2018 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

Inherent Limitations on Effectiveness of Controls

Internal control over financial reporting has inherent limitations. Internal control over financial reporting is a process that involves human diligence and compliance and is subject to lapses in judgment and breakdowns resulting from human failures. Internal control over financial reporting also can be circumvented by collusion or improper management override. Because of such limitations, there is a risk that material misstatements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by internal control over financial reporting. However, these inherent limitations are known features of the financial reporting process. Therefore, it is possible to design into the process safeguards to reduce, though not eliminate, this risk.

ITEM 16: [RESERVED]

ITEM 16A: AUDIT COMMITTEE FINANCIAL EXPERT

Silke Stenger was appointed Chair of our Audit Committee with effect from July 14, 2017. Our board of directors had determined that Ms. Stenger qualified as an “audit committee financial expert” and was “independent”, as such terms are used in Section 303A.02 of the NYSE Listed Company Manual.

ITEM 16B: CODE OF ETHICS

Code of Ethics and Code of Conduct

Our board of directors encourages and promotes a culture of ethical business conduct through the adoption and monitoring of our codes of ethics and conduct, the insider trading policy and such other policies as may be adopted from time to time.

Our board of directors adopted a written Code of Business Conduct and Ethics and Insider Trading Policy on July 12, 2017, referred to as the “Code of Ethics”. Since such adoption, our board of directors has conducted an assessment of its performance, including the extent to which the board and each director comply therewith. It is intended that such assessment will be conducted annually.

A copy of our Code of Ethics is available online at our website at www.mfcbancorp.com. A copy of the Code of Ethics is filed as Exhibit 11.1 to this Annual Report on Form 20-F.

We will provide a copy of the Code of Ethics to any person without charge, upon request. Requests can be sent by mail to: Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong, SAR China.

ITEM 16C: PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES

Audit Fees

The aggregate fees for audit services rendered for the audit of our annual financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 by BDO LLP were \$201,105 (before goods and services tax) and by MSR Partners LLP (formerly, Moore Stephens LLP), referred to as “Moore Stephens LLP”, were \$565,895. The aggregate fees for audit services rendered for the audit of our annual financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017 by Moore Stephens LLP were \$797,603 (before goods and services tax).

Audit-Related Fees

\$nil and \$nil were billed by BDO LLP and Moore Stephens LLP during the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively, for services that were reasonably related to the performance of the audit of our financial statements and that were not reported under the category “Audit Fees” above.

Tax Fees

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, no fees were billed by BDO LLP for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning. During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, no fees were billed by Moore Stephens LLP for tax, compliance, tax advice and tax planning.

All Other Fees

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, no fees were billed by BDO LLP for services not related to audit or tax. During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, no fees were billed by Moore Stephens LLP for services not related to audit or tax.

Audit Committee Pre-approval Policies and Procedures

The Audit Committee pre-approves all services provided by our independent auditors. All of the services and fees described under the categories of “Audit-Related Fees”, “Tax Fees” and “All Other Fees” were reviewed and approved by the Audit Committee before the respective services were rendered and none of such services were approved by the Audit Committee pursuant to paragraph (c)(7)(i)(C) of Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X.

The Audit Committee has considered the nature and amount of the fees billed for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 by BDO LLP and believes that the provision of the services for activities unrelated to the audit is compatible with maintaining the independence of such auditors.

ITEM 16D: EXEMPTIONS FROM THE LISTING STANDARDS FOR AUDIT COMMITTEES

Not applicable.

ITEM 16E: PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES BY THE ISSUER AND AFFILIATED PURCHASERS

In 2018, neither we nor any affiliated purchaser (as defined in the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*) purchased any of our Common Shares.

ITEM 16F: CHANGE IN REGISTRANT’S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT

Moore Stephens LLP served as our independent registered public accounting firm to audit our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017. Our Audit Committee and our board of directors had selected Moore Stephens LLP to serve as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018. On February 7, 2019, Moore Stephens LLP informed us that effective on that date, its employees and partners had been taken on by BDO LLP. As a result of this transaction, Moore Stephens LLP resigned as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018 and we have appointed BDO LLP as the successor independent registered public accounting firm. The resignation of Moore Stephens LLP and the appointment of BDO LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm have been considered and approved by our Audit Committee and our board of directors.

The audit report of Moore Stephens LLP on our consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2017 did not contain any adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion, and was not qualified or modified as to uncertainty, audit scope or accounting principle.

During the year ended December 31, 2017 and the subsequent period through February 7, 2019, there were no disagreements with Moore Stephens LLP on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure or auditing scope or procedure, which disagreement, had it not been resolved to the satisfaction of Moore Stephens LLP would have caused Moore Stephens LLP to make reference thereto in its report on the consolidated financial statements for such period. During this time, there have been no “reportable events”, as that term is described in Item 304(a)(1)(v) of Regulation S-K.

We have provided Moore Stephens LLP with a copy of the disclosure set forth in this Item 16F and requested that Moore Stephens LLP furnish us with a letter addressed to the Securities and Exchange Commission stating whether it agrees with the above statements. A copy of such letter dated April 30, 2019 is included as Exhibit 16.1 to this Annual Report.

During our most recent fiscal year and through the subsequent period on or prior to the appointment of BDO LLP, neither we nor anyone on our behalf has consulted with BDO LLP on either (a) the application of accounting principles to a specified transaction, either completed or proposed, or the type of audit opinion that might be rendered on our consolidated financial statements; or (b) any matter that was the subject of a disagreement, as that term is defined in Item 16F(a)(1)(iv) of Form 20-F (and the related instructions thereto) or a reportable event as set forth in Item 16F(a)(1)(v)(A) through (D) of Form 20-F.

ITEM 16G: CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Our Common Shares are listed on the NYSE. Summarized below are the significant differences between our corporate governance rules and the corporate governance rules applicable to U.S. domestic issuers under the listing standards of the NYSE:

- Section 303A.03 of the NYSE's Listed Company Manual requires the non-management directors of a listed company to meet at regularly scheduled executive sessions without management.

While our independent directors (all of whom are non-management directors) meet regularly for committee meetings at which they are all present without non-independent directors or management in attendance, they do not generally hold other regularly scheduled meetings at which non-independent directors and members of management are not in attendance.

- Section 303A.08 of the NYSE's Listed Company Manual requires shareholder approval of all equity compensation plans and material revisions to such plans.

Our current stock option plan has been approved by our shareholders. However, our plans do not specifically require shareholder approval of material revisions.

ITEM 16H: MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURE

Not applicable.

ITEM 17: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Not applicable. Please see "*Item 18: Financial Statements*".

ITEM 18: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following attached audit reports and financial statements are incorporated herein:

1. Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firms	52
2. Consolidated statements of financial position as of December 31, 2018 and 2017	55
3. Consolidated statements of operations for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016	56
4. Consolidated statements of comprehensive loss for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016	57
5. Consolidated statements of changes in equity for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016	58
6. Consolidated statements of cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016	60
7. Notes to consolidated financial statements.	61

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Shareholders and Board of Directors
MFC Bancorp Ltd.
Hong Kong, China

Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statement of financial position of MFC Bancorp Ltd. (the “Company”) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2018, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, changes in equity, and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “consolidated financial statements”). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company and subsidiaries at December 31, 2018, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audit we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audit included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audit also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ BDO LLP

BDO LLP

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2019.

London, United Kingdom
April 30, 2019

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the shareholders and the board of directors of MFC Bancorp Ltd

Opinion on the financial statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statement of financial position of MFC Bancorp Ltd and its subsidiaries (collectively the “Company”) as of December 31, 2017, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive (loss)/income, changes in equity and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “consolidated financial statements”). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Basis for opinion

The consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audit included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audit also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Moore Stephens LLP

Moore Stephens LLP
Chartered Accountants

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2017

150 Aldersgate Street
London
EC1A 4AB
United Kingdom

April 10, 2018

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Shareholders of MFC Bancorp Ltd.

We have completed an audit of MFC Bancorp Ltd. and its subsidiaries' prior year consolidated financial statements. Our opinion, based on our audit is presented below.

Report on the consolidated financial statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of MFC Bancorp Ltd. and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income (loss), changes in equity and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2016, and the related notes, which comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.

Management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with Canadian generally accepted auditing standards and the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement. Canadian generally accepted auditing standards also require that we comply with ethical requirements.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence, on a test basis, about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the company's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting principles and policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained in our audit is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion on the consolidated financial statements.

Opinion

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, MFC Bancorp Ltd.'s financial performance and their cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2016 in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Other matter

We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the adjustments and disclosures to retrospectively reflect the share consolidation and subsequent share split described in Note 1. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance about whether such adjustments and disclosures are appropriate and have been properly applied. Those adjustments and disclosures were audited by other auditors.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP

Chartered Professional Accountants

Vancouver, Canada
March 31, 2017

MFC BANCORP LTD.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF FINANCIAL POSITION
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands)

	Notes	December 31, 2018	December 31, 2017
ASSETS			
Current Assets			
Cash and cash equivalents		\$ 67,760	\$ 74,870
Short-term cash deposits		—	194
Securities	7	7,400	5,127
Securities – derivatives		209	190
Trade receivables	8	5,343	34,259
Tax receivables		104	747
Other receivables	9	8,675	21,690
Inventories	10	11,406	9,826
Restricted cash		281	—
Deposits, prepaid and other		828	2,378
Total current assets		102,006	149,281
Non-current Assets			
Securities	7	4,702	771
Securities – derivatives		—	56
Real estate held for sale		13,830	13,803
Investment property	11	37,804	37,660
Property, plant and equipment	12	58,325	83,954
Interests in resource properties	13	273,250	92,551
Tax receivables		488	—
Deferred income tax assets	14	15,735	16,694
Other		773	2,132
Other, restricted		—	45
Total non-current assets		404,907	247,666
		\$ 506,913	\$ 396,947
LIABILITIES AND EQUITY			
Current Liabilities			
Short-term bank borrowings	15	\$ —	\$ 2,074
Debt, current portion	16	—	43,733
Account payables and accrued expenses	17	26,315	44,750
Financial liabilities – derivatives		37	302
Income tax liabilities		855	1,910
Total current liabilities		27,207	92,769
Long-term Liabilities			
Loan payable	29	3,981	—
Decommissioning obligations	19	13,641	13,699
Deferred income tax liabilities	14	66,421	10,303
Other		1,257	227
Total long-term liabilities		85,300	24,229
Total liabilities		112,507	116,998
Equity			
Capital stock, fully paid	20	16	16
Additional paid-in capital		312,132	312,132
Treasury stock	20	(2,643)	(2,643)
Contributed surplus		16,735	16,666
Retained earnings (accumulated deficit)		19,333	(87,183)
Accumulated other comprehensive income		40,803	38,792
Shareholders' equity		386,376	277,780
Non-controlling interests		8,030	2,169
Total equity		394,406	279,949
		\$ 506,913	\$ 396,947

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands, Except Share and per Share Amounts)

	Notes	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Revenue	21	\$ 139,751	\$ 274,035	\$ 1,131,657
Costs and expenses:				
Costs of sales and services	21	129,522	263,586	1,061,052
Selling, general and administrative	21	26,365	45,472	79,164
Share-based compensation – selling, general and administrative	22	69	2,876	—
Loss on settlement	21	5,600	—	—
Finance costs		2,125	8,415	24,102
Impairment of available-for-sale securities		—	—	91
Reversal of impairment of hydrocarbon, resource properties and property, plant and equipment, net . .	12,13	(188,203)	(8,945)	(8,566)
Exchange differences on foreign currency transactions, net (gain) loss		(3,556)	1,038	(7,480)
		<u>(28,078)</u>	<u>312,442</u>	<u>1,148,363</u>
Income (loss) before income taxes		167,829	(38,407)	(16,706)
Income tax (expense) recovery:				
Income taxes	23	(56,105)	(6,885)	(5,994)
Resource revenue taxes		487	(1,773)	(1,020)
		<u>(55,618)</u>	<u>(8,658)</u>	<u>(7,014)</u>
Net income (loss) for the year		112,211	(47,065)	(23,720)
Net loss (income) attributable to non-controlling interests		65	(790)	(1,641)
Net income (loss) attributable to owners of the parent company		<u>\$ 112,276</u>	<u>\$ (47,855)</u>	<u>\$ (25,361)</u>
Earnings (loss) per share:				
Basic	24	<u>\$ 8.96</u>	<u>\$ (3.81)</u>	<u>\$ (2.01)</u>
Diluted	24	<u>\$ 8.96</u>	<u>\$ (3.81)</u>	<u>\$ (2.01)</u>
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding				
– Basic		12,534,801	12,544,141	12,628,454
– Diluted		12,534,801	12,544,141	12,628,454

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands)

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Net income (loss) for the year	\$ 112,211	\$ (47,065)	\$ (23,720)
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of income taxes:			
Items that will be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss			
Exchange differences arising from translating financial statements of foreign operations	2,440	7,002	(14,067)
Reclassification adjustment for exchange differences to statements of operations for subsidiaries deconsolidated	<u>672</u>	<u>(11,306)</u>	<u>(560)</u>
Net exchange difference	3,112	(4,304)	(14,627)
Fair value gain (loss) on available-for-sale securities	—	542	(73)
Reclassification of fair value (gain) loss on available-for-sale securities to statements of operations for securities disposed of or impaired	<u>—</u>	<u>(52)</u>	<u>141</u>
Net fair value gain on available-for-sale securities	—	490	68
Fair value loss on securities at fair value through other comprehensive income	(75)	—	—
Reclassification of reversal of impairment charge to statement of operations	<u>(3)</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>
Net fair value loss on securities at fair value through other comprehensive income	(78)	—	—
Items that will not be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss			
Remeasurement of net defined benefit liabilities	<u>—</u>	<u>219</u>	<u>192</u>
	<u>3,034</u>	<u>(3,595)</u>	<u>(14,367)</u>
Total comprehensive income (loss) for the year	115,245	(50,660)	(38,087)
Comprehensive income attributable to non-controlling interests	<u>(277)</u>	<u>(683)</u>	<u>(1,585)</u>
Comprehensive income (loss) attributable to owners of the parent company	<u>\$ 114,968</u>	<u>\$ (51,343)</u>	<u>\$ (39,672)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN EQUITY
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands)

	Capital Stock and additional paid-in capital		Treasury Stock		Contributed Surplus		Accumulated Other Securities at Fair Value		Comprehensive Income (Loss)		Non-controlling Interests	Total Equity		
	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Share-based Compensation	Contingently Issuable Shares	(Accumulated Deficit) Retained Earnings	Available-for-sale Securities	Other Comprehensive Income	Defined Benefit Obligations			Currency Translation Adjustment	Shareholders' Equity
Balance at January 1, 2016	17,315,673	\$ 419,916	(4,687,218)	\$ (61,085)	\$ 13,790	\$ 1,627	\$ (63,559)	\$ (97)	\$ —	\$ (499)	\$ 57,099	\$ 367,192	\$ 2,008	\$ 369,200
Net (loss) income	—	—	—	—	—	—	(25,361)	—	—	—	—	(25,361)	1,641	(23,720)
Dividends paid	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(1,683)	(1,683)
Net fair value gain	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	68	—	—	—	68	—	68
Net gain on remeasurements	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	192	—	192	—	192
Net exchange differences	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(14,571)	(14,571)	(56)	(14,627)
Balance at December 31, 2016	17,315,673	\$ 419,916	(4,687,218)	\$ (61,085)	\$ 13,790	\$ 1,627	\$ (88,920)	\$ (29)	\$ —	\$ (307)	\$ 42,528	\$ 327,520	\$ 1,910	\$ 329,430
Repurchase and cancellation of shares and instruments	(90,000)	(2,856)	—	—	—	(1,627)	3,165	—	—	—	—	(1,318)	—	(1,318)
Plan of arrangement – purchase of fractional shares	(3,654)	(41)	(41)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(41)	—	(41)
Plan of arrangement – cash distributions	—	—	(2)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(2)	—	(2)
Plan of arrangement – offsetting deficit	—	(87,850)	—	—	—	—	87,850	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Plan of arrangement – share capital restructuring	(4,621,571)	(17,019)	4,621,571	58,442	—	—	(41,423)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shares issued to non-controlling interests, net of subscription receivables	—	—	—	—	—	—	(47,855)	—	—	—	—	(47,855)	790	(47,065)
Net loss (income)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(1,601)	(1,601)
Dividends paid	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Share based compensation	—	—	—	—	2,876	—	—	—	—	—	—	2,876	—	2,876
Net fair value gain	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	490	—	—	—	490	—	490
Net gain on remeasurements	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	219	—	219	—	219
Disposition of subsidiaries	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	88	—	88	—	88
Net exchange differences	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(4,197)	(4,197)	(107)	(4,304)
Balance at December 31, 2017	12,600,448	\$ 312,148	(65,647)	\$ (2,643)	\$ 16,666	\$ —	\$ (87,183)	\$ 461	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 38,331	\$ 277,780	\$ 2,169	\$ 279,949
Change in accounting policy (see Note 2B(0))	—	—	—	—	—	—	524	(461)	(63)	—	—	—	—	—
Net income (loss)	—	—	—	—	—	—	112,276	—	—	—	—	112,276	(65)	112,211
Dividends paid	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(805)	(805)
Return of capital	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(52)	(52)
Share based compensation	—	—	—	—	69	—	—	—	—	—	—	69	—	69
Loss on disposition of shares in a subsidiary	—	—	—	—	—	—	(6,284)	—	—	—	(157)	(6,441)	6,441	—
Net fair value loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(78)	—	—	(78)	—	(78)
Net exchange differences	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2,770	2,770	342	3,112
Balance at December 31, 2018	12,600,448	\$ 312,148	(65,647)	\$ (2,643)	\$ 16,735	\$ —	\$ 19,333	\$ —	\$ (141)	\$ —	\$ 40,944	\$ 386,376	\$ 8,030	\$ 394,406

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN EQUITY (CONTINUED)
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands)

	Common Shares		Preferred Shares*		Total Capital Stock	
	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount
Components of Capital Stock						
Balance at December 31, 2015 and 2016	12,694,102	\$ 402,897	4,621,571	\$ 17,019	17,315,673	\$ 419,916
Issuance of contingently issuable shares	(90,000)	(2,856)	—	—	(90,000)	(2,856)
2017 plan of arrangement	(3,654)	(87,893)	(4,621,571)	(17,019)	(4,625,225)	(104,912)
Balance at December 31, 2017 and 2018	12,600,448	\$ 312,148	—	\$ —	12,600,448	\$ 312,148
<hr/>						
* Preferred Shares were held by the Group as Treasury Stock						
<hr/>						
Components of Common Shares						
As at December 31:						
Capital stock, no par value and fully paid				\$ —		\$402,897
Capital stock, at par value and fully paid				16	16	—
Additional paid-in capital				312,132	312,132	—
				\$312,148	\$312,148	\$402,897
<hr/>						
Components of Contributed Surplus						
As at December 31:						
Share-based compensation				\$16,735	\$16,666	\$13,790
Contingently issuable shares				—	—	1,627
				\$16,735	\$16,666	\$15,417

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016
(Canadian Dollars in Thousands)

	Notes	2018	2017	2016
Cash flows from operating activities:				
Net income (loss) for the year		\$ 112,211	\$ (47,065)	\$ (23,720)
Adjustments for:				
Amortization, depreciation and depletion		5,712	6,732	11,951
Exchange differences on foreign currency transactions		(3,556)	1,038	(7,480)
(Gain) loss on short-term securities and securities at FVTPL		(3,856)	1	66
(Gain) loss on dispositions of subsidiaries	21	(25,771)	10,219	(2,585)
Impairment of available-for-sale securities		—	—	91
Reversal of impairment of hydrocarbon and resource properties and property, plant and equipment, net		(188,203)	(8,945)	(8,566)
Share-based compensation	22	69	2,876	—
Deferred income taxes	23	55,238	3,141	1,454
Market value decrease (increase) on commodity inventories	21	109	(400)	4,273
Interest accretion		373	412	471
Change in fair value of a loan payable measured at FVTPL		167	—	—
Credit losses		34,985	23,923	18,277
Write-offs of intangible assets and prepaid	21	2,129	—	—
Gains on settlements of liabilities	21	(9,502)	(3,779)	—
Loss on settlement	21	5,600	—	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of effects of acquisitions and dispositions:				
Short-term cash deposits		197	—	39
Short-term securities		(1,050)	—	3,997
Receivables		10,264	30,188	(16,869)
Inventories		(1,429)	19,588	184,944
Restricted cash		(275)	—	624
Deposits, prepaid and other		70	8,361	24,661
Assets held for sale		—	12,636	—
Short-term bank borrowings		(1,621)	(34,513)	34,707
Account payables and accrued expenses		435	(26,513)	(124,528)
Income tax liabilities		(1,046)	21	(1,576)
Accrued pension assets, net of obligations		—	(54)	43
Other		1,559	(1,064)	(407)
Cash flows (used in) provided by operating activities		<u>(7,191)</u>	<u>(3,197)</u>	<u>99,867</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:				
Purchases of securities		(1,199)	—	—
Purchases of property, plant and equipment, net		(198)	4,783	(198)
Acquisition of intangible assets		—	(765)	—
Proceeds from sales of investments, net		—	526	10,138
Proceeds from sales of investment property		1,018	—	—
Increase in loan receivables		—	(590)	(366)
Decrease in loan receivables		—	725	693
Acquisitions of subsidiaries, net of cash and cash equivalents acquired		—	(44)	(23,926)
Dispositions of subsidiaries, net of cash and cash equivalents disposed of		(825)	(8,384)	48,796
Other		(77)	255	345
Cash flows (used in) provided by investing activities		<u>(1,281)</u>	<u>(3,494)</u>	<u>35,482</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:				
Debt repayment		—	(42,253)	(186,286)
Debt borrowing		—	—	20,694
Cash paid under the plan of arrangement		—	(43)	—
Shares issued to non-controlling interests		—	1,177	—
Return of capital to non-controlling interests		(52)	—	—
Dividends paid to non-controlling interests		(805)	(1,601)	(1,683)
Cash flows used in financing activities		<u>(857)</u>	<u>(42,720)</u>	<u>(167,275)</u>
Exchange rate effect on cash and cash equivalents		2,219	3,605	(37,540)
Decrease in cash and cash equivalents		(7,110)	(45,806)	(69,466)
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year		74,870	120,676	197,519
Cash and cash equivalents included in assets held for sale, net		—	—	(7,377)
Cash and cash equivalents, end of year		<u>\$ 67,760</u>	<u>\$ 74,870</u>	<u>\$ 120,676</u>
Supplemental cash flows disclosure (see Note 27)				
Interest received		\$ 906	\$ 1,079	\$ 3,632
Dividends received		168	—	6
Interest paid		(1,198)	(4,575)	(14,533)
Income taxes paid		(2,626)	(2,029)	(3,317)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 1. Nature of Business

MFC Bancorp Ltd. (“MFC Bancorp” or the “Company” is incorporated under the laws of the Cayman Islands. MFC Bancorp and the entities it controls are collectively known as the “Group” in these consolidated financial statements. The Group is a merchant bank that provides financial services, with its core asset being an interest in the Scully Iron Ore Mine in Newfoundland & Labrador, Canada. In addition, the Group owns other merchant banking assets and seeks to invest in businesses or assets whose intrinsic value is not properly reflected. The Group’s investing activities are generally not passive. The Group actively seeks investments where its financial expertise and management can add or unlock value.

On July 14, 2017, the former holding company of the Group completed a plan of arrangement (the “Arrangement”) under the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia). The Arrangement was approved by its shareholders and the British Columbia Supreme Court in July 2017. Pursuant to the Arrangement and the Court order, among other things: (i) its common shares were consolidated on a 100 for 1 basis, with any resulting fractional shares being eliminated and, thereafter, such shares were split on a 1 for 20 basis (the “Share Consolidation / Split”); and (ii) each holder of its shares received one of our common shares for each share held as of the effective date of the Arrangement. In these consolidated financial statements, the number of shares and earnings per share in the prior period have been restated to reflect the Share Consolidation / Split.

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

A. Basis of Presentation

Basis of Accounting

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (the “IASB”). MFC Bancorp complies with all the requirements of IFRS. The principal accounting policies applied in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements are set out below. These policies have been consistently applied with the exception of the adoption of IFRS 9, *Financial Instruments* (“IFRS 9”), IFRS 15, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (“IFRS 15”) and the amendments to IFRS 2, *Share-Based Payment* from January 1, 2018. See Note 2B.

These consolidated financial statements were prepared using going concern, accrual (except for cash flow information) and historical cost (except for investment property and certain financial assets and financial liabilities which are measured at fair value and certain inventories that are measured at fair value less costs to sell) bases.

The presentation currency of these consolidated financial statements is the Canadian dollar (\$), rounded to the nearest thousand (except per share amounts).

Principles of Consolidation

These consolidated financial statements include the accounts of MFC Bancorp and entities it controls. The Company controls an investee if and only if it has all the following: (a) power over the investee; (b) exposure, or rights, to variable returns from its involvement with the investee; and (c) the ability to use its power over the investee to affect the amount of its returns. When the Group holds, directly or indirectly, more than 50% of the voting power of an investee, it is presumed that the Group controls the investee, unless it can be clearly demonstrated that this is not the case. Subsidiaries are consolidated from the date of their acquisition, being the date on which the Group obtains control, and continue to be consolidated until the date that such control ceases. All intercompany balances and transactions, including unrealized profits arising from intragroup transactions, have been eliminated in full. Unrealized losses are eliminated unless the transaction provides evidence of an impairment of the asset transferred.

On the acquisition date, a non-controlling interest is measured at either its fair value or its proportionate share in the recognized amounts of the subsidiary’s identifiable net assets, on a transaction-by-transaction basis. Subsequently, the non-controlling interest increases or decreases for its share of changes in equity since the acquisition date.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

After initial consolidation of a subsidiary, when the proportion of equity held by non-controlling interests changes, the Group, as long as it continues to control the subsidiary, adjusts the carrying amounts of the controlling and non-controlling interests to reflect the changes in their relative interests in the subsidiary. The Group recognizes directly in equity any difference between the amount by which the non-controlling interests are adjusted and the fair value of the consideration paid or received and attributes such difference to the owners of MFC Bancorp.

When the Group loses control of a subsidiary it: (a) derecognizes (i) the assets (including any goodwill) and liabilities of the subsidiary at their carrying amounts at the date when control is lost and (ii) the carrying amount of any non-controlling interests in the former subsidiary at the date when control is lost (including any components of other comprehensive income attributable to them); (b) recognizes (i) the fair value of the consideration received, if any, from the transaction, event or circumstances that resulted in the loss of control, (ii) if the transaction, event or circumstances that resulted in the loss of control involves a distribution of shares of the subsidiary to owners in their capacity as owners, that distribution and (iii) any investment retained in the former subsidiary at its fair value at the date when control is lost; (c) reclassifies to profit or loss, or transfers directly to retained earnings if required by IFRS, the amounts recognized in other comprehensive income in relation to the subsidiary; and (d) recognizes any resulting difference as a gain or loss under costs of sales and services in profit or loss attributable to the owners of MFC Bancorp.

The financial statements of MFC Bancorp and its subsidiaries used in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements are prepared as of the same date, using uniform accounting policies for like transactions and other events in similar circumstances.

Foreign Currency Translation

The presentation currency of the Group's consolidated financial statements is the Canadian dollar.

MFC Bancorp conducts its business throughout the world through its foreign operations. Foreign operations are entities that are subsidiaries or branches, the activities of which are based or conducted in countries or currencies other than those of MFC Bancorp. Functional currency is the currency of the primary economic environment in which an entity operates and is normally the currency in which the entity primarily generates and expends cash. Foreign currency is a currency other than the functional currency of the entity. The functional currencies of the Company and its subsidiaries and branches primarily comprise the Canadian dollar, Euro ("EUR" or "€") and United States dollar ("US\$").

Reporting foreign currency transactions in the functional currency

A foreign currency transaction is a transaction that is denominated or requires settlement in a foreign currency. A foreign currency transaction is recorded, on initial recognition in an entity's functional currency, by applying to the foreign currency amount the spot exchange rate between the functional currency and the foreign currency at the date of the transaction. At the end of each reporting period: (a) foreign currency monetary items are translated using the closing rate; (b) non-monetary items denominated in a foreign currency that are measured in terms of historical cost are translated using the exchange rate at the date of the transaction; and (c) foreign currency non-monetary items that are measured at fair value are translated using the exchange rates at the date when the fair value was determined.

Exchange differences arising on the settlement of monetary items or on translating monetary items at rates different from those at which they were translated on initial recognition during the period or in previous periods are recognized in profit or loss in the period in which they arise, except for exchange differences arising on a monetary item that forms part of a reporting entity's net investment in a foreign operation which are initially recorded in other comprehensive income in the consolidated financial statements and reclassified from equity to profit or loss on disposal of the net investment.

When a gain or loss on a non-monetary item is recognized in other comprehensive income, any exchange component of that gain or loss is recognized in other comprehensive income. Conversely, when a gain or loss on a non-monetary item is recognized in profit or loss, any exchange component of that gain or loss is recognized in profit or loss.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Use of a presentation currency other than the functional currency

When an entity presents its financial statements in a currency that differs from its functional currency, the results and financial position of the entity are translated into the presentation currency using the following procedures: (a) assets and liabilities for each statement of financial position presented are translated at the closing rate at the date of the statement of financial position; (b) income and expenses for each statement of operations presented are translated at exchange rates at the dates of the transactions or, for practical reasons, the average exchange rates for the periods when they approximate the exchange rates at the dates of the transactions; (c) individual items within equity are translated at either the historical exchange rates when practical or at the closing exchange rates at the date of the statement of financial position; and (d) all resulting exchange differences are recognized in other comprehensive income.

The following table sets out exchange rates for the translation of the Euro and United States dollar, which represented the major trading currencies of the Group, into the Canadian dollar:

	<u>EUR</u>	<u>US\$</u>
Closing rate at December 31, 2018	1.5613	1.3642
Average rate for the year 2018	1.5302	1.2957
Closing rate at December 31, 2017	1.5052	1.2545
Average rate for the year 2017	1.4650	1.2986
Closing rate at December 31, 2016	1.4169	1.3427
Average rate for the year 2016	1.4660	1.3248

Fair Value Measurement

Certain assets and liabilities of the Group are measured at fair value (see Note 2B).

Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. A fair value measurement is for a particular asset or liability. Therefore, when measuring fair value, the Group takes into account the characteristics of the asset or liability if market participants would take those characteristics into account when pricing the asset or liability at the measurement date. A fair value measurement assumes that the transaction to sell the asset or transfer the liability takes place either:

- (a) in the principal market for the asset or liability; or
- (b) in the absence of a principal market, in the most advantageous market for the asset or liability.

The Group measures the fair value of an asset or a liability using the assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability, assuming that market participants act in their economic best interest.

The Group uses valuation techniques that are appropriate in the circumstances and for which sufficient data is available to measure fair value, maximizing the use of relevant observable inputs and minimizing the use of unobservable inputs. IFRS 13, *Fair Value Measurement* (“IFRS 13”), establishes a fair value hierarchy that categorizes the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value into three levels:

Level 1 inputs are quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the entity can access at the measurement date.

Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly.

Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for the asset or liability.

Assessing the significance of a particular input to the fair value measurement in its entirety requires judgment, considering factors specific to the asset or liability.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Non-current Assets Held for Sale

A non-current asset (or disposal group) is classified as held for sale if its carrying amount will be recovered principally through a sale transaction rather than through continuing use. For this to be the case, the asset (or disposal group) must be available for immediate sale in its present condition subject only to terms that are usual and customary for the sale of such asset (or disposal group), the appropriate level of management must be committed to a plan to sell the asset (or disposal group) and an active program to locate a buyer and complete the plan must have been initiated. Further, the asset (or disposal group) must be actively marketed for sale at a price that is reasonable in relation to its current fair value and the sale is highly probable to complete within one year from the date of classification, except as permitted under certain events and circumstances. If the aforesaid criteria are no longer met, the Group ceases to classify the asset (or disposal group) as held for sale.

Non-current assets (and disposal groups) classified as held for sale are measured at the lower of their carrying amounts and fair values less costs to sell. The Group does not depreciate or amortize a non-current asset while it is classified as held for sale.

Use of Estimates and Assumptions and Measurement Uncertainty

The timely preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reporting period. Management's best estimates are based on the facts and circumstances available at the time estimates are made, historical experience, general economic conditions and trends and management's assessment of probable future outcomes of these matters. Actual results could differ from these estimates and such differences could be material. For critical judgments in applying accounting policies and major sources of estimation uncertainty (see Notes 2C and 2D).

B. Significant Accounting Policies

(i) Financial Instruments

IFRS 9

The Group adopted IFRS 9 with a date of initial application of January 1, 2018.

Financial assets and financial liabilities are recognized on the consolidated statement of financial position when the Group becomes a party to the financial instrument contract. A financial asset is derecognized either when the Group has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset or when cash flows expire. A financial liability is derecognized when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged, canceled or expired.

The Group classifies its financial assets into the following measurement categories: (a) those measured subsequently at fair value (either through other comprehensive income ("FVTOCI") or through profit or loss ("FVTPL") and (b) subsequently measured at amortized cost. The classification of financial assets depends on the Group's business model for managing the financial assets and the terms of the contractual cash flows. The Group classifies its financial liabilities as subsequently measured at amortized cost, except for financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss.

Initial Adoption of IFRS 9

IFRS 9 does not require restatement of comparative periods. Accordingly, the Group has reflected the retrospective impact of the adoption of IFRS 9 due to the change in accounting policy for investments in equity securities as an adjustment to opening accumulated deficit as at January 1, 2018. Under IFRS 9, the Group's investments in equity securities, which were previously classified as available for sale or at cost

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

under IAS 39, *Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement* (“IAS 39”), are measured at FVTPL. The retrospective adjustment, which represented the fair value gain adjustment on investments in equity securities as of January 1, 2018, was \$524 and debited to other comprehensive income.

Upon the initial adoption of IFRS 9 on January 1, 2018, the financial assets which were previously classified at fair value through profit or loss, held-to-maturity, loans and receivables and available-for-sale have been transferred to, financial assets measured at FVTPL, FVTOCI or amortised cost.

IAS 39 (Accounting Policies Applicable Prior to January 1, 2018)

All financial assets and financial liabilities were classified by characteristic and/or management intent. Except for certain financial instruments which were excluded from the scope, all financial assets were classified into one of four categories: (a) at fair value through profit or loss; (b) held-to-maturity; (c) loans and receivables; and (d) available-for-sale, and all financial liabilities were classified into one of two categories: (a) at fair value through profit or loss; and (b) at amortized cost.

A financial asset or financial liability at fair value through profit or loss was a financial asset or financial liability that met either of the following conditions: (a) it was classified as held for trading if it was (i) acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term, (ii) part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that were managed together and for which there was evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit taking, or (iii) a derivative, except for a derivative that was a designated and effective hedging instrument; or (b) it was designated by the Group upon initial recognition as at fair value through profit or loss when certain conditions were met.

Available-for-sale financial assets were those non-derivative financial assets that were designated as available for sale, or that were not classified as loans and receivables, held-to-maturity investments, or at fair value through profit or loss.

Non-derivative financial liabilities were classified as financial liabilities measured at amortized cost.

After initial recognition, the Group measured financial assets, including derivatives that were assets, at their fair values, without any deduction for transaction costs it might incur on sale or other disposal, except for the following financial assets: (a) held-to-maturity investments which were measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method; (b) loans and receivables which were measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method; and (c) investments in equity instruments that did not have a quoted market price in an active market and whose fair value could not be reliably measured and derivatives that were linked to and had to be settled by delivery of such unquoted equity instruments which were measured at cost. All financial assets except those measured at fair value through profit or loss were subject to review for impairment.

Common to Both IFRS 9 and IAS 39

Regular way purchases and sales of financial assets are accounted for at the settlement date.

When a financial asset or financial liability is recognized initially, the Group measures it at its fair value plus, in the case of a financial asset or financial liability not at fair value through profit or loss, transaction costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition or issue of the financial asset or financial liability. Transaction costs related to the acquisition or issue of a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through profit or loss are expensed as incurred. The subsequent measurement of a financial instrument and the recognition of associated gains and losses are determined by the financial instrument classification.

A gain or loss on a financial asset or financial liability classified as at fair value through profit or loss is recognized in profit or loss for the period in which it arises. A gain or loss on an asset measured at FVTOCI or classified as available for sale is recognized in other comprehensive income, except for impairment losses, until the financial asset is derecognized, at which time the cumulative gain or loss previously recognized in accumulated other comprehensive income is recognized in profit or loss for the period. For financial assets and financial liabilities carried at amortized cost, a gain or loss is recognized in profit or loss when the financial asset or financial liability is derecognized or impaired and through the amortization process.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Net gains or net losses on financial instruments at fair value through profit or loss do not include interest or dividend income.

Whenever quoted market prices are available, bid prices are used for the measurement of fair value of financial assets while ask prices are used for financial liabilities. When the market for a financial instrument is not active, the Group establishes fair value by using a valuation technique. Valuation techniques include using recent arm's length market transactions between knowledgeable, willing parties, if available; reference to the current fair value of another financial instrument that is substantially the same; discounted cash flow analysis; option pricing models; and other valuation techniques commonly used by market participants to price the financial instrument.

(ii) Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand, cash at banks and highly liquid investments (e.g. money market funds) readily convertible to a known amount of cash and subject to an insignificant risk of change in value. They have maturities of three months or less from the date of acquisition and are generally interest-bearing.

(iii) Securities

IFRS 9

Investments in equity securities are measured at FVTPL.

Debt securities which are held within a business model whose objective is to collect the contractual cash flows and sell the debt securities, and that have contractual cash flows that are solely payments of principal and interest on the principal outstanding are measured at FVTOCI.

IAS 39 (Accounting Policies Applicable Prior to January 1, 2018)

Securities were classified as at fair value through profit or loss (i.e. held for trading) or short-term or long-term available-for-sale securities.

Publicly-traded securities (debt and equity) which were acquired principally for the purpose of selling in the near term were classified as held for trading.

Available-for-sale securities consisted of publicly-traded securities and unlisted equity securities which were not held for trading and not held to maturity. Long-term available-for-sale securities were purchased with the intention to hold until market conditions render alternative investments more attractive. Short-term available-for-sale securities were held with the intention of management to sell within the current operating cycle but did not meet the definition of trading securities.

When a decline in the fair value of an available-for-sale security had been recognized in other comprehensive income and there was objective evidence that the asset is impaired, the cumulative loss that had been recognized in other comprehensive income was reclassified from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment even though the security had not been derecognized. A significant or prolonged decline in the fair value of an investment in an equity instrument below its cost is an objective evidence of impairment. The Group considered a decline in excess of 25 percent generally as significant and a decline in a quoted market price that persisted for 15 months as prolonged. Impairment losses recognized in profit or loss for an investment in an equity instrument classified as available for sale would not be reversed through profit or loss.

Gains and losses on sales of securities are calculated on the average cost basis.

(iv) Securities and Financial Liabilities – Derivatives

A derivative is a financial instrument or other contract with all three of the following characteristics: (a) its value changes in response to the change in a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, product price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable; (b) it requires

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors; and (c) it is settled at a future date. A derivative financial instrument is either exchange-traded or negotiated. A derivative financial instrument is included in the consolidated statement of financial position as a security (i.e. financial asset) or a financial liability and measured at fair value. The recognition and measurement of a derivative financial instrument under both IFRS 9 and IAS 39 does not apply to a contract that is entered into and continues to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the Group's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements, unless the Group, as allowed under IFRS 9, designates the contract as measured at fair value through profit or loss if it eliminates or significantly reduces a measurement inconsistency.

Where the Group has both the legal right and intent to settle derivative assets and liabilities simultaneously with the counterparty, the net fair value of the derivative financial instruments is reported as an asset or liability, as appropriate.

Changes in the fair values of derivative financial instruments that do not qualify for hedge accounting are recognized in profit or loss as they arise.

(v) Financial Liabilities

The Group measures financial liabilities at either amortised cost or FVTPL. Financial liabilities are measured at amortised cost, unless either it is held for trading and hence required to be measured at FVTPL or the group elects to measure the financial liability at FVTPL.

(vi) Receivables

Receivables are measured at amortized cost under both IFRS 9 and IAS 39.

Receivables are net of an allowance for credit losses, if any. The Group performs ongoing credit evaluations of its customers and recognizes a loss allowance for expected credit losses. Receivables are considered past due on an individual basis based on the terms of the contracts.

(vii) Allowance for Credit Losses

IFRS 9

The Group recognizes and measures a loss allowance for expected credit losses on a financial asset which is measured at amortized cost or at FVTOCI, including a lease receivable, a contract asset or a loan commitment and a financial guarantee contract. The impairment methodology applied depends on whether there has been a significant increase in credit risk since initial recognition. To assess whether there is a significant increase in credit risk, the Group compares the risk of a default occurring on the asset as at the reporting date with the risk of default as at the date of initial recognition based on all information available, and reasonable and supportive forward-looking information.

When there is significant increase in credit risk or for credit-impaired financial assets, the loss allowance equals the lifetime expected credit losses which is defined as the expected credit losses that result from all possible default events over the expected life of a financial instrument. If, at the reporting date, the credit risk on a financial asset has not increased significantly since initial recognition, the Group measures the loss allowance for that financial instrument at an amount equal to the 12-month expected credit losses which is defined as the portion of lifetime expected credit losses that represent the expected credit losses that result from default events on a financial instrument that are possible within the 12 months after the reporting date.

As required by IFRS 9, the Group always measures the loss allowance at an amount equal to lifetime expected credit losses for trade receivables and contract assets that result from transactions that are within the scope of IFRS 15.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

IAS 39 (Accounting Policies Applicable Prior to January 1, 2018)

The Group applied credit risk assessment and valuation methods to its trade and other receivables. Credit losses arose primarily from receivables but might also relate to other credit instruments issued by or on behalf of the Group, such as guarantees and letters of credit. Specific provisions were established on an individual receivable basis.

Common to Both IFRS 9 and IAS 39

The Group's allowance for credit losses is maintained at an amount considered adequate to absorb expected or estimated credit-related losses. Such allowance reflects management's best estimate of the losses in the Group's financial assets and judgments about economic conditions. Estimates and judgments could change in the near term, and could result in a significant change to a recognized allowance. An allowance for credit losses is increased by provisions, which are recognized in profit or loss and reduced by write-offs net of any recoveries. Write-offs are generally recorded after all reasonable restructuring or collection activities have taken place and there is no realistic prospect of recovery.

(viii) Inventories

Inventories principally consist of raw materials, work-in-progress, and finished goods. Inventories, other than commodities products, are recorded at the lower of cost and net realizable value. Cost, where appropriate, includes an allocation of manufacturing overheads incurred in bringing inventories to their present location and condition and is assigned by using the first-in, first-out or weighted average cost formula, depending on the class of inventories. Net realizable value represents the estimated selling price less all estimated costs of completion and costs to be incurred in marketing, selling and distribution. The amount of any write-down of inventories to net realizable value and all losses of inventories are recognized as an expense in the period the write-down or loss occurs. The reversal of a write-down of inventories arising from an increase in net realizable value is recognized as a reduction in the amount of costs of sales and services in the period in which the reversal occurs.

Commodity products acquired by the Group as a broker-trader in the Group's merchant banking activities with the purpose of selling in the near future and generating a profit from fluctuations in price or broker-traders' margin are measured at fair value less costs to sell. Fair values of the Group's inventories are determined by reference to their contractual selling prices or quoted prices in marketplaces in the absence of a contract (Level 1 fair value hierarchy), in accordance with guidance on fair value in IFRS 13.

(ix) Real Estate Held for Sale

Real estate held for sale is real estate intended for sale in the ordinary course of business or in the process of construction or development for such sale.

Real estate held for sale is measured at the lower of cost (on a specific item basis) and net realizable value. Net realizable value is estimated by reference to sale proceeds of similar properties sold in the ordinary course of business less all estimated selling expenses around the reporting date, or by management estimates based on prevailing market conditions. The amount of any write-down of properties to net realizable value is recognized as an expense in the period the write-down occurs. The reversal of a write-down arising from an increase in net realizable value is recognized in the period in which the reversal occurs.

All of the Group's real estate is located in Europe.

(x) Investment Property

Investment property is property that is held for generating rental income or for capital appreciation or both, rather than for: (a) use in the production or supply of goods or services or for administrative purposes; or (b) sale in the ordinary course of business. The Group's investment property comprises freehold land and buildings. Investment property is initially recognized at cost including related transaction costs. After initial recognition, investment property is measured at fair value, with changes in fair value recognized in profit or loss in the period in which they arise.

MFC BANCORP LTD.

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016**

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

The Group determines fair value without any deduction for transaction costs it may incur on sale or other disposal. Fair value of the Group's investment property is based on valuations prepared annually by external evaluators in accordance with guidance issued by the International Valuation Standard Committee and reviewed by the Group, or these valuations are updated by management when there are no significant changes in the inputs to the valuation prepared by external evaluators in the preceding year, in accordance with guidance on fair value in IFRS 13.

(xi) Property, Plant and Equipment

Property, plant and equipment are carried at cost, net of accumulated depreciation and, if any, accumulated impairment losses. The initial cost of an item of property, plant and equipment comprises its purchase price or construction cost, any costs directly attributable to bringing the asset into operation, the initial estimate of any decommissioning obligation, if any, and, for qualifying assets, borrowing costs. The purchase price or construction cost is the aggregate amount paid and the fair value of any other consideration given to acquire the asset. Where an item of property, plant and equipment or part of the item that was separately depreciated is replaced and it is probable that future economic benefits associated with the replacement item will flow to the Group, the cost of the replacement item is capitalized and the carrying amount of the replaced asset is derecognized. All other replacement expenditures are recognized in profit or loss when incurred.

Inspection costs associated with major maintenance programs are capitalized and amortized over the period to the next inspection. All other maintenance costs are expensed as incurred.

The depreciable amounts of the Group's property, plant, and equipment (i.e. the costs of the assets less their residual values) are depreciated according to the following estimated useful lives and methods:

	<u>Lives</u>	<u>Method</u>
Buildings	20 years	straight-line
Processing plant and equipment	5 to 20 years	straight-line
Refinery and power plants	20 to 30 years	straight-line
Office equipment and other	3 to 10 years	straight-line

Depreciation expense is included in costs of sales and services or selling, general and administrative expense, whichever is appropriate.

The residual value and the useful life of an asset are reviewed at least at each financial year-end and, if expectations differ from previous estimates, the changes, if any, are accounted for as a change in an accounting estimate in accordance with IAS 8, *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. The depreciation method applied to an asset is reviewed at least at each financial year-end and, if there has been a significant change in the expected pattern of consumption of the future economic benefits embodied in the asset, the method is changed to reflect the changed pattern.

The carrying amount of an item of property, plant and equipment is derecognized upon disposal or when no future economic benefits are expected to arise from the continued use of the asset. Any gain or loss arising on derecognition of the asset (calculated as the difference between the net disposal proceeds and the carrying amount of the item) is included in profit or loss in the period in which the item is derecognized.

(xii) Interests in Resource Properties

The Group's interests in resource properties are mainly comprised of an interest in the Scully Iron Ore Mine, and to a lesser extent exploration and evaluation assets (comprising hydrocarbon probable reserves and hydrocarbon undeveloped lands), hydrocarbon development and production assets.

(a) Exploration and evaluation assets

Exploration and evaluation costs, including the costs of acquiring undeveloped land and drilling costs are initially capitalized until the drilling of the well is complete and the results have been evaluated in order to determine the technical feasibility and commercial viability of the asset. Technical feasibility and

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

commercial viability are considered to be determinable when proved and/or probable reserves are determined to exist. When proved and/or probable reserves are found, the drilling costs and the costs of associated hydrocarbon undeveloped lands are reclassified to hydrocarbon development and production assets or from hydrocarbon undeveloped lands to hydrocarbon probable reserves. The cost of hydrocarbon undeveloped land that expires or any impairment recognized during a period is charged to profit or loss. Pre-license costs are recognized in profit or loss as incurred.

(b) Hydrocarbon development and production assets and an interest in an iron ore mine

The Group's interests in resource properties are mainly comprised of an interest in the Scully Iron Ore Mine, and to a lesser extent, hydrocarbon development and production assets.

(1) Recognition and measurement

Interests in resource properties are initially measured at cost and subsequently carried at cost less accumulated depletion and, if any, accumulated impairment losses.

The cost of an interest in resource property includes the initial purchase price and directly attributable expenditures to find, develop, construct and complete the asset. This cost includes reclassifications from exploration and evaluation assets, installation or completion of infrastructure facilities such as platforms, pipelines and the drilling of development wells, including unsuccessful development or delineation wells. Any costs directly attributable to bringing the asset to the location and condition necessary to operate as intended by management and result in an identifiable future benefit are also capitalized. These costs include an estimate of decommissioning obligations and, for qualifying assets, capitalized borrowing costs.

(2) Subsequent costs

Costs incurred subsequent to the determination of technical feasibility and commercial viability and the costs of replacing parts of property are capitalized only when they increase the future economic benefits embodied in the specific asset to which they relate. Such capitalized costs generally represent costs incurred in developing proved reserves and bringing in, or enhancing production from, such reserves and are accumulated on a field or geotechnical area basis. All other expenditures are recognized in profit or loss as incurred. The costs of periodic servicing of the properties are recognized in costs of sales and services as incurred.

The carrying amount of any replaced or sold component is derecognized.

(3) Depletion

The carrying amount of an interest in a resource property is depleted using the unit of production method by reference to the ratio of production in the period to the related reserves.

For interests in hydrocarbon development and production assets, depletion is calculated based on proved producing reserves, taking into account estimated future development costs necessary to bring those reserves into production and the estimated salvage values of the assets at the end of their estimated useful lives. Future development costs are estimated taking into account the level of development required to continue to produce the reserves. Reserves for hydrocarbon development and production assets are estimated annually by independent qualified reserve evaluators and represent the estimated quantities of natural gas, natural gas liquids and crude oil which geological, geophysical and engineering data demonstrate with a specified degree of certainty to be recoverable in future years from known reservoirs and which are considered commercially producible. For depletion purposes, relative volumes of petroleum and natural gas production and reserves are converted at the energy equivalent conversion rate of six thousand cubic feet of natural gas to one barrel of crude oil.

For the interest in an iron ore mine, depletion is calculated based on proved and probable reserves. The estimate of the reserves of iron ore is reviewed whenever significant new information about the reserve is available, or at least at each financial year-end.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

(xiii) Impairment of Non-financial Assets

The Group reviews the carrying amounts of its non-financial assets at each reporting date to determine whether there is any indication of impairment. If any such indication exists, an asset's recoverable amount is estimated.

The recoverable amount is the higher of an asset's fair value less costs of disposal and value in use. Where an individual asset does not generate separately identifiable cash flows, an impairment test is performed at the cash-generating unit ("CGU") level. A CGU is the smallest identifiable group of assets that generates cash inflows that are largely independent of the cash inflows from other assets or groups of assets. Where the carrying amount of an asset (or CGU) exceeds its recoverable amount, the asset (or CGU) is considered impaired and written down to its recoverable amount. In assessing value in use, the estimated future cash flows are discounted to their present value using a discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset. In determining fair value less costs of disposal, an appropriate valuation model is used. These calculations are corroborated by external valuation metrics or other available fair value indicators wherever possible.

An assessment is made at the end of each reporting period whether there is an indication that previously recognized impairment losses no longer exist or have decreased. If such indication exists, an estimate of the asset's (or CGU's) recoverable amount is reviewed. A previously recognized impairment loss is reversed to the extent that the events or circumstances that triggered the original impairment have changed. The reversal is limited so that the carrying amount of the asset does not exceed its recoverable amount, nor exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depreciation, depletion and amortization, had no impairment loss been recognized for the asset in prior periods. A reversal of an impairment loss for a CGU is allocated to the assets of the CGU pro-rata with the carrying amounts of those assets. During the year ended December 31, 2018, there was a reversal of impairment of the Group's interest in an iron ore mine (see Note 13).

Hydrocarbon probable reserves are tested for impairment when they are reclassified to hydrocarbon development and production assets or when indicators exist that suggest the carrying amount may exceed the recoverable amount. For purposes of impairment testing, hydrocarbon probable reserves are grouped with related producing resource properties as a CGU with common geography and geological characteristics.

Undeveloped lands are evaluated for indicators separately from hydrocarbon development and production assets and hydrocarbon probable reserves. Impairment is assessed by comparing the carrying amount of undeveloped lands to values determined by an independent land evaluator based on recent market transactions. Management also takes into account future plans for those properties, the remaining terms of the leases and any other factors that may be indicators of potential impairment.

(xiv) Defined Benefit Pension Plan

Prior to October 1, 2017, the Group had defined benefit pension plans.

The Group recognizes an accrued pension obligation, which represents the deficit of a defined benefit pension plan and is calculated by deducting the fair value of plan assets from the present value of the defined benefit obligations, in the consolidated statement of financial position.

The Group uses the projected unit credit method to determine the present value of its defined benefit obligations and the related current service cost and, where applicable, past service cost. Actuarial assumptions are unbiased and mutually compatible and comprise demographic and financial assumptions.

Past service cost, which is the change in the present value of the defined benefit obligation for employee service in prior periods resulting from a plan amendment or curtailment, is recognized as an expense at the earlier of when the amendment/curtailment occurs or when the Group recognizes related restructuring or termination costs. The gain or loss on a settlement, which is the difference between the present value of the defined benefit obligation being settled and the settlement price, is recognized in profit or loss when the settlement occurs.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Current service cost and net interest on the accrued pension obligation are recognized in profit or loss.

Remeasurements of the accrued pension obligation, which comprise actuarial gains and losses, the return on plan assets (excluding amounts included in net interest on the net defined benefit liability (asset)) and any change in the effect of the asset ceiling (excluding amounts included in net interest on the net defined benefit liability (asset)), are recognized in other comprehensive income and are not reclassified to profit or loss in a subsequent period.

(xv) Provisions and Contingencies

Provisions are recognized when the Group has a present obligation as a result of a past event, it is probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation. Provisions are measured at management's best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the obligation at the reporting date. Where appropriate, the future cash flow estimates are adjusted to reflect risks specific to the liability. If the effect of the time value of money is material, provisions are determined by discounting the expected future cash flows at a pre-tax rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the liability. Where discounting is used, the increase in the provision due to the passage of time is recorded as accretion and included in finance costs.

Contingent liabilities are possible obligations whose existence will only be confirmed by future events not wholly within the control of the Group. Contingent liabilities, other than those assumed in connection with business combinations which are measured at fair value at the acquisition date, are not recognized in the consolidated financial statements but are disclosed unless the possibility of an outflow of economic resources is considered remote. Legal costs in connection with a loss contingency are recognized in profit or loss when incurred.

The Group does not recognize a contingent or reimbursement asset unless it is virtually certain that the contingent or reimbursement asset will be received.

(xvi) Decommissioning Obligations

The Group provides for decommissioning, restoration and similar liabilities (collectively, decommissioning obligations) on its resource properties, facilities, production platforms, pipelines and other facilities based on estimates established by current legislation and industry practices. The decommissioning obligation is initially measured at fair value and capitalized to interests in resource properties or property, plant and equipment as an asset retirement cost. The liability is estimated by discounting expected future cash flows required to settle the liability using a pre-tax rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the liability. The estimated future asset retirement costs are adjusted for risks such as project, physical, regulatory and timing. The estimates are reviewed periodically. Changes in the provision as a result of changes in the estimated future costs or discount rates are added to or deducted from the asset retirement cost in the period of the change. The liability accretes for the effect of time value of money until it is settled. The capitalized asset retirement cost is amortized through depreciation, depletion and amortization over the estimated useful life of the related asset. Actual asset retirement expenditures are recorded against the obligation when incurred. Any difference between the accrued liability and the actual expenditures incurred is recorded as a gain or loss in the settlement period.

(xvii) Own Equity Instruments

The Group's holdings of its own equity instruments, including common stock and preferred stock, are presented as "treasury stock" and deducted from shareholders' equity at cost and in the determination of the number of equity shares outstanding. No gain or loss is recognized in profit or loss on the purchase, sale, re-issue or cancellation of the Group's own equity instruments.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

(xviii) Revenue Recognition

IFRS 15

Effective January 1, 2018, the Group adopted IFRS 15, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (“IFRS 15”). Pursuant to IFRS 15, the Group recognizes revenue, excluding interest and dividend income and other such income from financial instruments recognized in accordance with IFRS 9, upon transfer of promised goods or services to customers in amounts that reflect the consideration to which the Group expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services based on the following five step approach:

- Step 1: Identify the contracts with customers;
- Step 2: Identify the performance obligations in the contract;
- Step 3: Determine the transaction price;
- Step 4: Allocate the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract; and
- Step 5: Recognize revenue when (or as) the entity satisfies a performance obligation.

The Group typically satisfies its performance obligations upon shipment of the goods, or upon delivery as the services are rendered or upon completion of services depending on whether the performance obligations are satisfied over time or at a point in time. The Group primarily acts as principal in contracts with its customers. The Group does not have material obligations for returns, refunds and other similar obligations, nor warranties and related obligations.

For performance obligations that the Group satisfies over time, the Group typically uses time-based measures of progress because the Group is providing a series of distinct services that are substantially the same and have the same pattern of transfer.

For performance obligations that the Group satisfies at a point in time, the Group typically uses shipment or delivery of goods and/or services in evaluating when a customer obtains control of promised goods or services.

A significant financing component exists and is accounted for if the timing of payments agreed to by the parties to the contract provides the customer or the Group with a significant benefit of financing the transfer of goods and services to the customer. As a practical expedient, the Group does not adjust the promised amount of consideration for the effects of a significant financing component if the Group expects, at contract inception, that the period between when the Group transfers a promised good or service to a customer and when the customer pays for that good or service will be one year or less.

The incremental costs of obtaining contracts with customers and the costs incurred in fulfilling contracts with customers that are directly associated with the contract are recognized as an asset (hereinafter, “assets arising from contract costs”) if those costs are expected to be recoverable, which are included in other long-term assets in the consolidated statements of financial position. The incremental costs of obtaining contracts are those costs that the Group incurs to obtain a contract with a customer that they would not have incurred if the contract had not been obtained. As a practical expedient, the Group recognizes the incremental costs of obtaining a contract as an expense when incurred if the amortization period of the asset that the entity otherwise would have recognized is one year or less. Assets arising from contract costs are amortized using the straight-line method over their estimated contract periods.

The Group exercises judgments in determining the amount of the costs incurred to obtain or fulfill a contract with a customer, which includes, but is not limited to (a) the likelihood of obtaining the contract, (b) the estimate of the profitability of the contract, and (c) the credit risk of the customer. An impairment loss will be recognized in profit or loss to the extent that the carrying amount of the asset exceeds (a) the remaining amount of consideration that the entity expects to receive in exchange for the goods or services to which the asset relates, less (b) the costs that relate directly to providing those goods or services and that have not been recognized as expenses.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Initial Adoption of IFRS 15

Pursuant to the transition arrangement permitted under IFRS 15, the Group applied IFRS 15 retrospectively with the cumulative effect of initially applying IFRS 15 recognized at the date of initial application. There were no revisions on the accounts in the consolidated statement of financial position on January 1, 2018 upon the adoption of IFRS 15.

Moreover, there were no financial statement line items affected in the current year ended December 31, 2018 by the application of IFRS 15 as compared to the presentation under IAS 18, *Revenue* and related interpretations.

IAS 18, Revenue (“IAS 18”) (Accounting Policies Applicable Prior to January 1, 2018)

The Group accounted for revenues under IAS 18 and other related international accounting standards and interpretations for the recognition and measurement of revenue until December 31, 2017.

Revenue included proceeds from sales of merchant banking products and services, real estate properties, medical instruments and supplies, rental income on investment property, interest and dividend income and net gains on securities. In an agency relationship, revenue is the amount of commission earned.

Revenue from the sale of goods was recognized when: (a) the Group had transferred to the buyer the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the goods (which generally coincided with the time when the goods were delivered to the buyer and title had passed); (b) the Group retained neither continuing managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership nor effective control over the goods sold; (c) the amount of revenue could be measured reliably; (d) it was probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction would flow to the Group; and (e) the costs incurred or to be incurred in respect of the transaction could be measured reliably.

Revenue from the rendering of services is recognized when: (a) the amount of revenue could be measured reliably; (b) it was probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction would flow to the Group; (c) the stage of completion of the transaction at the reporting date could be measured reliably; and (d) the costs incurred for the transaction and the costs to complete the transaction could be measured reliably.

Revenue was measured at the fair value of the consideration received or receivable and represents amounts receivable for goods and services provided in the normal course of business, net of discounts, customs duties and sales taxes. When the Group charges shipping and handling fees to customers, such fees are included in sales revenue. Where the Group acts as an agent on behalf of a third party to procure or market goods, any associated fee income is recognized and no purchase or sale is recorded.

Interest, royalty and dividend income were recognized when it is probable that economic benefits will flow to the Group and the amount of income could be measured reliably.

(xix) Costs of Sales and Services

Costs of sales and services include the costs of goods (merchant banking products and services, real estate properties, medical instruments and supplies) sold. The costs of goods sold include both the direct cost of materials and indirect costs, freight charges, purchasing and receiving costs, inspection costs, distribution costs and a provision for warranty when applicable.

Costs of sales and services also include write-downs of inventories, net loss on securities, credit losses on financial assets, gains or losses on dispositions of subsidiaries, and fair value gain and loss on investment property, commodity inventories and derivative contracts.

The reversal of write-downs of inventories and credit losses reduces the costs of sales and services.

(xx) Employee Benefits

Wages, salaries, bonuses, social security contributions, paid annual leave and sick leave are accrued in the period in which the associated services are rendered by employees of the Group. The employee benefits are included in costs of sales and services or selling, general and administrative expenses, as applicable.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

(xix) Leases

A lease is classified as an operating lease if it does not transfer substantially all the risks and rewards incidental to ownership of the leased asset. Operating lease payments are expensed in profit or loss over the term of the lease on a straight line basis.

Lease income from operating leases is recognized in income on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease.

(xxii) Share-Based Compensation

The cost of equity-settled transactions with employees is measured by reference to the fair value of the equity instruments on the date at which the equity instruments are granted and is recognized as an expense over the vesting period, which ends on the date on which the relevant employees become fully entitled to the award. Fair value is determined by using an appropriate valuation model. At each reporting date before vesting, the cumulative expense is calculated, representing the extent to which the vesting period has expired and management's best estimate of the achievement or otherwise of non-market conditions and the number of equity instruments that will ultimately vest. The movement in cumulative expense since the previous reporting date is recognized in profit or loss, with a corresponding amount in equity.

When the terms of an equity-settled award are modified or a new award is designated as replacing a cancelled or settled award, the cost based on the original award terms continues to be recognized over the original vesting period. In addition, an expense is recognized over the remainder of the new vesting period for the incremental fair value of any modification, based on the difference between the fair value of the original award and the fair value of the modified award, both as measured on the date of the modification. No reduction is recognized if this difference is negative. When an equity-settled award is cancelled other than by forfeiture when the vesting conditions are not satisfied, it is treated as if it had vested on the date of cancellation and any cost not yet recognized in profit or loss for the award is expensed immediately.

Share-based compensation expenses are included in selling, general and administrative expenses. When stock options are exercised, the exercise price proceeds together with the amount initially recorded in contributed surplus are credited to capital stock.

(xxiii) Finance Costs

Finance costs comprise interest expense on borrowings, accretion of the discount on provisions, decommissioning obligations and other liabilities and charges and fees relating to factoring transactions.

Finance costs directly attributable to the acquisition, construction or production of qualifying assets, which are assets that necessarily take a substantial period of time to get ready for their intended use, are added to the cost of those assets until such time as the assets are substantially ready for their intended use. All other finance costs are recognized in profit or loss in the period in which they are incurred.

Capital stock and debt are recorded at the amount of proceeds received, net of direct issue costs (transaction costs). The transaction costs attributable to debt issued are amortized over the debt term using the effective interest method.

(xxiv) Income Taxes

Income tax expense (recovery) comprises current income tax expense (recovery) and deferred income tax expense (recovery) and includes all domestic and foreign taxes which are based on taxable profits. The current income tax provision is based on the taxable profits for the period. Taxable profit differs from income before income taxes as reported in the consolidated statements of operations because it excludes items of income or expense that are taxable or deductible in other periods and items that are never taxable or deductible. The Group's liability for current income tax is calculated using tax rates that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the reporting date. Deferred income tax is provided, using the liability method, on all temporary differences at the reporting date between the tax bases of assets and liabilities and their carrying amounts in the consolidated statement of financial position.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

Deferred income tax liabilities are recognized for all taxable temporary differences:

- except where the deferred income tax liability arises on goodwill that is not tax deductible or the initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction that is not a business combination and, at the time of the transaction, affects neither the accounting profit nor taxable profit or loss.
- in respect of taxable temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches, except where the Group is able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the temporary differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future.

Deferred income tax assets are recognized for all deductible temporary differences, carry-forward of unused tax credits and unused tax losses, to the extent that it is probable that taxable profit will be available against which the deductible temporary differences and the carry-forward of unused tax credits and unused tax losses can be utilized:

- except where the deferred income tax asset arises from the initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction that is not a business combination and, at the time of the transaction, affects neither the accounting profit nor taxable profit or loss.
- in respect of deductible temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches, deferred tax assets are recognized only to the extent that it is probable that the temporary differences will reverse in the foreseeable future.

On the reporting date, management reviews the Group's deferred income tax assets to determine whether it is probable that the benefits associated with these assets will be realized. The Group also reassesses unrecognized deferred income tax assets. The review and assessment involve evaluating both positive and negative evidence. The Group recognizes a previously unrecognized deferred income tax asset to the extent that it has become probable that future taxable profit will allow the deferred income tax asset to be recovered.

Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are measured at the tax rates that are expected to apply in the year when the asset is realized or the liability is settled, based on tax rates and tax laws that have been enacted or substantively enacted at the reporting date. Tax relating to items recognized in other comprehensive income or equity is recognized in other comprehensive income or equity and not in profit or loss.

Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are offset when there is a legally enforceable right to set off current income tax assets against current income tax liabilities, and when they relate to income tax levied by the same taxation authority and the Group intends to settle its current income tax assets and liabilities on a net basis.

Withholding taxes (which include withholding taxes payable by a subsidiary on distributions to the Group) are treated as income taxes when they have the characteristics of an income tax. This is considered to be the case when they are imposed under government authority and the amount payable is calculated by reference to revenue derived.

The Group includes interest charges and penalties on current income tax liabilities as a component of interest expense.

(xxv) Earnings Per Share

Basic earnings per share is determined by dividing net income attributable to ordinary equity holders of MFC Bancorp by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period, net of treasury stock.

Diluted earnings per share is determined using the same method as basic earnings per share, except that the weighted average number of common shares outstanding includes the effect of dilutive potential ordinary shares. For the purpose of calculating diluted earnings per share, the Group assumes the exercise of its dilutive options with the assumed proceeds from these instruments regarded as having been received from

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

the issue of common shares at the average market price of common shares during the period. The difference between the number of common shares issued and the number of common shares that would have been issued at the average market price of common shares during the period is treated as an issue of common shares for no consideration and added to the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. The amount of the dilution is the average market price of common shares during the period minus the issue price and the issue price includes the fair value of services to be supplied to the Group in the future under the share-based payment arrangement. Potential ordinary shares are treated as dilutive when, and only when, their conversion to ordinary shares would decrease earnings per share or increase loss per share from continuing operations.

When share-based payments are granted during the period, the shares issuable are weighted to reflect the portion of the period during which the payments are outstanding. The shares issuable are also weighted to reflect forfeitures occurring during the period. When stock options are exercised during the period, shares issuable are weighted to reflect the portion of the period prior to the exercise date and actual shares issued are included in the weighted average number of shares outstanding from the exercise date.

(xvi) Business Combinations

The Group accounts for each business combination by applying the acquisition method. Pursuant to the acquisition method, the Group, when a business combination occurs and it is identified as the acquirer, determines the acquisition date (on which the Group legally transfers the consideration, acquires the assets and assumes the liabilities of the acquiree), recognizes and measures the identifiable assets acquired, the liabilities assumed and any non-controlling interest in the acquiree, and recognizes and measures goodwill or a gain from a bargain purchase (i.e. negative goodwill). The identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed are measured at their acquisition-date fair values. A non-controlling interest is measured at either its fair value or its proportionate share in the recognized amounts of the subsidiary's identifiable net assets, on a transaction-by-transaction basis.

The consideration transferred in a business combination is measured at fair value, which is calculated as the sum of the acquisition-date fair values of the assets transferred by the Group, the liabilities incurred by the Group to former owners of the acquiree and the equity interests issued by the Group.

In a business combination achieved in stages, the Group remeasures its previously held equity interest in the acquiree at its acquisition-date fair value and recognizes the resulting gain or loss, if any, in profit or loss.

If the initial accounting for a business combination is incomplete by the end of the reporting period in which the combination occurs, the Group reports in its financial statements provisional amounts for the items for which the accounting is incomplete. During the measurement period, the Group retrospectively adjusts the provisional amounts recognized at the acquisition date to reflect new information obtained about facts and circumstances that existed as of the acquisition date and, if known, would have affected the measurement of the amounts recognized as of that date. During the measurement period, the Group also recognizes additional assets or liabilities if new information is obtained about facts and circumstances that existed as of the acquisition date and, if known, would have resulted in the recognition of those assets and liabilities as of that date. The measurement period ends as soon as the Group receives the information it was seeking about facts and circumstances that existed as of the acquisition date or learns that more information is not obtainable. However, the measurement period does not exceed one year from the acquisition date.

Acquisition-related costs are costs the Group incurs to effect a business combination. Those costs include finder's fees; advisory, legal, accounting, valuation and other professional or consulting fees; general administrative costs, including the costs of maintaining an internal acquisitions department; and costs of registering and issuing debt and equity securities. The Group accounts for acquisition-related costs as expenses in the periods in which the costs are incurred and the services are received, except for the costs to issue debt or equity securities (see Significant Accounting Policy Item (xxiii) above).

C. Critical Judgments in Applying Accounting Policies

In the process of applying the Group's accounting policies, management makes various judgments, apart from those involving estimations under Note 2D below, that can significantly affect the amounts it

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

recognizes in the consolidated financial statements. The following are the critical judgments that management has made in the process of applying the Group's accounting policies and that have the most significant effects on the amounts recognized in the consolidated financial statements:

(i) Identification of Cash-generating Units

The Group's assets are aggregated into CGUs, for the purpose of assessing and calculating impairment, based on their ability to generate largely independent cash flows. The determination of CGUs requires judgment in defining the smallest identifiable group of assets that generate cash inflows that are largely independent of the cash inflows from other assets or groups of assets. CGUs have been determined based on similar geological structure, shared infrastructure, geographical proximity, product type and similar exposure to market risks. In the event facts and circumstances surrounding factors used to determine the Group's CGUs change, the Group will re-determine the groupings of CGUs.

(ii) Impairment and Reversals of Impairment on Non-Financial Assets

The carrying amounts of the Group's non-financial assets, other than and deferred tax assets, are reviewed at the end of each reporting period to determine whether there is an indication of impairment or reversal of previously recorded impairment. If such indication exists, the recoverable amount is estimated.

Determining whether there are any indications of impairment or impairment reversals requires significant judgment of external factors, such as an extended change in prices or margins for hydrocarbon commodities or refined products, a significant change in an asset's market value, a significant revision of estimated volumes, revision of future development costs, a change in the entity's market capitalization or significant changes in the technological, market, economic or legal environment that would have an impact on the Company's CGUs. Given that the calculations for recoverable amounts require the use of estimates and assumptions, including forecasts of commodity prices, marketing supply and demand, product margins and in the case of hydrocarbon properties, expected production volumes, it is possible that the assumptions may change, which may impact the estimated life of the CGU and may require a material adjustment to the carrying value of goodwill and non-financial assets.

Impairment losses recognized in prior years are assessed at the end of each reporting period for indications that the impairment has decreased or no longer exists. An impairment loss is reversed only to the extent that the carrying amount of the asset or CGU does not exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depletion, depreciation and amortization, if no impairment loss had been recognized.

(iii) Valuation of Investment Property

Investment properties are included in the consolidated statement of financial position at their market value, unless their fair value cannot be reliably determined at that time. The market value of investment properties is assessed annually by an independent qualified valuer, who is an authorized expert for the valuation of developed and undeveloped land in Germany, after taking into consideration the net income with inputs on realized basic rents, operating costs and damages and defects. The assumptions adopted in the property valuations are based on the market conditions existing at the end of the reporting period, with reference to current market sales prices and the appropriate capitalization rate. Changes in any of these inputs, or incorrect assumptions related to any of these items, could materially impact these valuations.

(iv) Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations

The Group applies judgment to determine whether an asset (or disposal group) is available for immediate sale in its present condition and that its sale is highly probable and therefore should be classified as held for sale at the balance sheet date. In order to assess whether it is highly probable that the sale can be completed within one year, or the extension period in certain circumstances, management reviews the business and economic factors, both macro and micro, which include the industry trends and capital markets, and the progress towards a sale transaction. It is also open to all forms of sales, including exchanges of non-current assets for other non-current assets when the exchange will have commercial substance in accordance with IAS 16, *Property, Plant and Equipment*.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

A discontinued operation is a component of an entity (which comprises operations and cash flows that can be clearly distinguished, operationally and, for financial reporting purposes, from the rest of the entity) that either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale. While a component of the entity has distinguished financial data, judgments must be exercised on the presentation of inter-company transactions between components that are presented as discontinued operations and those that are presented as continuing operations. Furthermore, the allocation of income tax expense (recovery) also involves the exercise of judgments as the tax position of continuing operations may have an impact on the tax position of discontinued operations, or vice versa.

(v) Consolidation

Judgment is required when assessing whether the Group controls and therefore consolidates an entity, particularly an entity with complex share capital, management/decision-making or financing structures. Judgment is required to determine whether the Group has decision-making power over the key relevant activities of an investee, whether the Group has exposure or rights to variable returns from its involvement with the investee and whether the Group has the ability to use that power to affect its returns.

(vi) Purchase Price Allocations

For each business combination, the Group measures the identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed at their acquisition-date fair values. The determination of fair value requires the Group to make assumptions, estimates and judgments regarding future events, including the profit forecast of the new subsidiary in the future. The allocation process is inherently subjective and impacts the amounts assigned to individual identifiable assets and liabilities, including the fair value of long-lived assets, the recognition and measurement of any unrecorded intangible assets and/or contingencies and the final determination of the amount of goodwill or bargain purchase. The inputs to the exercise of judgments include legal, contractual, business and economic factors. As a result, the purchase price allocation impacts the Group's reported assets and liabilities and future net earnings due to the impact on future depreciation, depletion and amortization and impairment tests.

(vii) Credit Losses and Impairment of Receivables

On January 1, 2018, the Group adopted IFRS 9. As a result, the Group applies credit risk assessment and valuation methods to its trade and other receivables under IFRS 9 which establishes a single forward-looking expected loss impairment model to replace the incurred impairment model under IAS 39.

The Group measures the loss allowance for a financial instrument at an amount equal to the lifetime expected credit losses if the credit risk on that financial instrument has increased significantly since initial recognition. The objective of the impairment requirements is to recognize lifetime expected credit losses for all financial instruments for which there have been significant increases in credit risk since initial recognition — whether assessed on an individual or collective basis — considering all reasonable and supportable information, including that which is forward-looking.

At each reporting date, management assesses whether the credit risk on a financial instrument has increased significantly since initial recognition. When making the assessment, management uses the change in the risk of a default occurring over the expected life of the financial instrument instead of the change in the amount of expected credit losses. To make that assessment, management compares the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the reporting date with the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the date of initial recognition and consider reasonable and supportable information, that is available without undue cost or effort, that is indicative of significant increases in credit risk since initial recognition.

Allowance for credit losses is maintained at an amount considered adequate to absorb the expected credit losses. Such allowance for credit losses reflects management's best estimate of changes in the credit risk on the Group's financial instruments and judgments about economic conditions. The assessment of allowance for credit losses is a complex process, particularly on a looking-forward basis; which involves a significant

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

degree of judgment and a high level of estimation uncertainty. The input factors include the assessment of the credit risk of the Group's financial instruments, legal rights and obligations under all the contracts and the expected future cash flows from the financial instruments, which include inventories, mortgages and other credit enhancement instruments. The major source of estimation uncertainty relates to the likelihood of the various scenarios under which different amounts are expected to be recovered through the security in place on the financial assets. The expected future cash flows are projected under different scenarios and weighted by probability, which involves the exercise of significant judgment. Estimates and judgments could change in the near-term and could result in a significant change to a recognized allowance.

D. Major Sources of Estimation Uncertainty

The timely preparation of the consolidated financial statements requires management to make judgments, estimates and assumptions that affect the application of accounting policies and the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, income and expenses.

The major assumptions about the future and other major sources of estimation uncertainty at the end of the reporting period that have a significant risk of resulting in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year are discussed below. These items require management's most difficult, subjective or complex estimates. Actual results may differ materially from these estimates.

(i) Interests in Resource Properties and Reserve Estimates

The Group had interests in resource properties mainly comprised of an interest in the Scully Iron Ore Mine, and to a lesser extent, hydrocarbon properties, with an aggregate carrying amount of \$273,250 as at December 31, 2018.

Estimation of reported recoverable quantities of proved and probable reserves include judgmental assumptions regarding production profile, prices of products produced, exchange rates, remediation costs, timing and amount of future development costs and production, transportation and marketing costs for future cash flows. It also requires interpretation of geological and geophysical models in anticipated recoveries. The economical, geological and technical factors used to estimate reserves may change from period to period. Changes in reported reserves can impact the carrying amounts of the Group's interests in resource properties and/or property, plant and equipment, the recognition of impairment losses and reversal of impairment losses, the calculation of depletion and depreciation, the provision for decommissioning obligations and the recognition of deferred income tax assets or liabilities due to changes in expected future cash flows. The recoverable quantities of reserves and estimated cash flows from the Group's hydrocarbon interests are independently evaluated by reserve engineers at least annually. During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Group recognized a reversal of impairment of \$188,203 in respect of its interest in an iron ore mine (see Note 13).

The Group's hydrocarbon reserves represent the estimated quantities of petroleum, natural gas and natural gas liquids which geological, geophysical and engineering data demonstrate with a specified degree of certainty to be economically recoverable in future years from known reservoirs and which are considered commercially producible. Such reserves may be considered commercially producible if management has the intention of developing and producing them and such intention is based upon: (a) a reasonable assessment of the future economics of such production; (b) a reasonable expectation that there is a market for all or substantially all the expected hydrocarbon production; and (c) evidence that the necessary production, transmission and transportation facilities are available or can be made available. Reserves may only be considered proven and probable if producibility is supported by either production or conclusive formation tests.

Included in interests in resource properties as at December 31, 2018, were exploration and evaluation assets with an aggregate carrying amount of \$17,007. Exploration and evaluation assets are assessed for impairment when facts and circumstances suggest that the carrying amount of an exploration and evaluation asset may exceed its recoverable amount and upon reclassification to hydrocarbon development

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

and production assets. If such indicators exist, impairment, if any, is determined by comparing the carrying amounts to the recoverable amounts. The measurement of the recoverable amount involves a number of assumptions, including the timing, likelihood and amount of commercial production, further resource assessment plans and future revenue and costs expected from the asset, if any.

(ii) Impairment of Other Non-Financial Assets

The Group had property, plant and equipment aggregating \$58,325 as at December 31, 2018, consisting mainly of a power plant and a natural gas processing facility. Impairment of the Group's non-financial assets is evaluated at the CGU level. In testing for impairment, the recoverable amounts of the Company's CGUs are determined as the higher of their values in use and fair values less costs of disposal. In the absence of quoted market prices, the recoverable amount is based on estimates of future production rates, future product selling prices and costs, discount rates and other relevant assumptions. Increases in future costs and/or decreases in estimates of future production rates and product selling prices may result in a write-down of the Group's property, plant and equipment.

(iii) Taxation

The Group is subject to tax in a number of jurisdictions and judgment is required in determining the worldwide provision for income taxes. Deferred income taxes are recognized for temporary differences using the liability method, with deferred income tax liabilities generally being provided for in full (except for taxable temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches where the Group is able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the temporary differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future) and deferred income tax assets being recognized to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profits will be available against which the temporary differences can be utilized.

The operations and organization structures of the Group are complex, and related tax interpretations, regulations and legislation are continually changing. As a result, there are usually some tax matters in question that result in uncertain tax positions. The Group only recognizes the income tax benefit of an uncertain tax position when it is probable that the ultimate determination of the tax treatment of the position will result in that benefit being realized.

The Group companies' income tax filings are subject to audit by taxation authorities in numerous jurisdictions. There are audits in progress and items under review, some of which may increase the Group's income tax liabilities. In addition, the companies have filed appeals and have disputed certain issues. While the results of these items cannot be ascertained at this time, the Group believes that the Group has an adequate provision for income taxes based on available information.

The Group recognized deferred income tax assets of \$15,735 as at December 31, 2018. In assessing the realizability of deferred income tax assets, management considers whether it is probable that some portion or all of the deferred income tax assets will be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred income tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which temporary differences become deductible or before tax loss and tax credit carry-forwards expire. Management considers the future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences, projected future taxable income, taxable income in prior years and tax planning strategies in making this assessment. Unrecognized deferred income tax assets are reassessed at the end of each reporting period.

The Group provides for future income tax liabilities in respect of uncertain tax positions where additional income tax may become payable in future periods and such provisions are based on management's assessment of exposure. The Group did not recognize the full deferred tax liability on taxable temporary differences associated with investments in subsidiaries and branches where the Group is able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the temporary differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future. The Group may change its investment decision in its normal course of business, thus resulting in additional income tax liabilities.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

(iv) Contingencies

Pursuant to IAS 37, *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*, the Group does not recognize a contingent liability. By their nature, contingencies will only be resolved when one or more future events occur or fail to occur. The assessment of contingencies inherently involves the exercise of significant judgment and estimates of the outcome of future events. If it becomes probable that an outflow of future economic benefits will be required for an item previously accounted for as a contingent liability, an accrual or a provision is recognized in the consolidated financial statements of the period in which the change in probability occurs. See Note 26 for further disclosures on contingencies.

E. Accounting Changes

Future Accounting Changes

IFRS 16, *Leases* (“IFRS 16”), issued in January 2016, introduces a single on-balance sheet model of accounting for leases by lessees that eliminates the distinction between operating and finance leases. Lessor accounting remains largely unchanged and the distinction between operating and finance leases is retained. IFRS 16 supersedes IAS 17, *Leases*, and related interpretations and management will adopt IFRS 16 for annual reporting periods beginning on January 1, 2019. Management concluded that the impacts of IFRS 16 on the Group’s consolidated financial statements as of January 1, 2019 would be a debit of \$2,911 to the right-of-use assets with credits of \$843 and \$2,068, respectively, to the current and long-term lease payables.

In December 2017, *Annual Improvements to IFRS Standards 2015-2017 Cycle* amended paragraph 14 of IAS 23, *Borrowing Costs*. The amendments clarify that the capitalization rate to the expenditures on a qualifying asset shall be the weighted average of the borrowing costs applicable to the borrowings of the entity that are outstanding during the period, and an entity shall exclude from this calculation borrowing costs applicable to borrowings made specifically for the purpose of obtaining the qualifying asset until substantially all the activities necessary to prepare that asset for its intended use or sale are complete. The Group will apply these amendments for annual reporting periods beginning January 1, 2019 and management concluded that there will be no material impact on the Group’s consolidated financial statements.

In June 2017, IASB issued IFRIC 23 *Uncertainty over Income Tax Treatments*. IFRIC 23 aims to reduce diversity in how companies recognize and measure a tax liability or tax asset when there is uncertainty over income tax treatments. The Group will apply IFRIC 23 for annual reporting periods beginning January 1, 2019 and management concluded that there will be no material impact on the Group’s consolidated financial statements.

In October 2018, IASB issued amendments to its definition of material to make it easier for companies to make materiality judgements. The updated definition amends IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, and IAS 8, *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. The amendments clarify the definition of material and how it should be applied and ensure that the definition of material is consistent across all IFRS Standards. The changes are effective from January 1, 2020, but companies can decide to apply them earlier. Management is assessing its impacts on the Group’s financial statement presentation.

Note 3. Capital Disclosure on the Group’s Objectives, Policies and Processes for Managing Its Capital Structure

The Group’s objectives when managing capital are to: (a) safeguard the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern so that it can continue to provide returns for shareholders and benefits for other stakeholders; (b) provide an adequate return to shareholders by pricing products and services commensurately with the level of risk; and (c) maintain a flexible capital structure which optimizes the cost of capital at acceptable risk.

The Group allocates capital in proportion to risk. The Group manages the capital structure and makes adjustments to it in light of changes in economic conditions and the risk characteristics of the underlying assets. In order to maintain or adjust the capital structure, the Group may adjust the amount of dividends paid to shareholders, return capital to shareholders, issue new shares, or issue new debt.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 3. Capital Disclosure on the Group's Objectives, Policies and Processes for Managing Its Capital Structure (continued)

Consistent with others in its industry, the Group monitors its capital on the basis of the debt-to-adjusted capital ratio and long-term debt-to-equity ratio. The debt-to-adjusted capital ratio is calculated as net debt divided by adjusted capital. Net debt is calculated as total debt less cash and cash equivalents. Adjusted capital comprises all components of shareholders' equity. The long-term debt-to-equity ratio is calculated as long-term debt divided by shareholders' equity. Debt does not include short-term bank borrowings.

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Total debt	\$ —	\$ 43,733
Less: cash and cash equivalents	(67,760)	(74,870)
Net debt	Not applicable	Not applicable
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780
Debt-to-adjusted capital ratio	Not applicable	Not applicable

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Long-term debt	\$ —	\$ —
Shareholders' equity	386,376	277,780
Long-term debt-to-equity ratio	Not applicable	Not applicable

The above tables do not include a non-interest bearing long-term loan payable of \$3,981 (2017: \$nil) which does not have a fixed repayment date.

During 2018, the Group's strategy, which was unchanged from 2017, was to maintain the debt-to-adjusted capital ratio and the long-term debt-to-equity ratio at a manageable level. The ratios did not change in 2018 (i.e. not applicable).

Note 4. Acquisitions of Consolidated Entities

Year 2018

There was no business combination during the year ended December 31, 2018.

Year 2017

Effective October 1, 2017, the Group completed the acquisition of a metal processing company based in Europe. Pursuant to the transaction, the Group acquired the company which equaled the fair values of the identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed on the closing date. Goodwill of \$502 was recognized upon the acquisition of the metal processing company. The amount of acquisition-related costs was nominal, which was included in selling, general and administrative expenses in profit or loss. This acquisition was not considered a material business combination and did not have material impact on the Group's financial position.

Year 2016

Effective February 1, 2016, the Group completed the acquisition of a western European bank (the "Bank"). Pursuant to the transaction, the Group acquired the Bank for total purchase consideration of \$142,419 which equaled the fair values of the identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed on the closing date. There were no goodwill or intangible assets acquired. The amount of acquisition-related costs was nominal, which was included in selling, general and administrative expenses in profit or loss. This acquisition was not considered a material business combination and did not have material impact on the Group's financial position.

Note 5. Assets Classified as Held for Sale

On December 31, 2016, the Group reclassified the assets and liabilities of a commodities trading subsidiary as held for sale, which had net assets held for sale of \$15,770. The sale was completed in 2017 and included in the consolidated statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2017.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 6. Business Segment Information

The Group is primarily in the merchant banking business, which includes its iron ore royalty, financial services and other resource interests and other proprietary investments.

In reporting to management, the Group's operating results are categorized into the following operating segments: merchant banking and all other segments.

Basis of Presentation

In reporting segments, certain of the Group's business lines have been aggregated where they have similar economic characteristics and are similar in each of the following areas: (a) the nature of the products and services; (b) the methods of distribution; and (b) the types or classes of customers/clients for the products and services.

The Group's merchant banking segment includes its interest, captive supply assets, financial services and proprietary investing activities. The Group's core merchant banking asset is an interest in the Scully Iron Ore Mine in Wabush, Newfoundland & Labrador, Canada. In addition, The Group owns other merchant banking assets and seeks to invest in businesses or assets whose intrinsic value is not properly reflected. The Group's investing activities are generally not passive. The Group actively seeks investments where its financial expertise and management can add or unlock value.

The all other segment includes the Group's corporate and operating segments whose quantitative amounts do not exceed 10% of any of the Group's: (a) reported revenue; (b) net income; or (c) total assets. The Group's all other operating segment primarily includes business activities in medical equipment, instruments, supplies and services.

The accounting policies of the operating segments are the same as those described in the summary of significant accounting policies in Note 2B. The chief operating decision maker evaluates performance on the basis of income or loss from operations before income taxes and does not consider acquisition accounting adjustments in assessing the performance of the Group's reporting segments. The segment information presented below is prepared according to the following methodologies: (a) revenue and expenses directly associated with each segment are included in determining pre-tax earnings; (b) intersegment sales and transfers are accounted for as if the sales or transfers were to third parties at current market prices; (c) certain selling, general and administrative expenses paid by corporate, particularly incentive compensation and share-based compensation, are not allocated to reporting segments; (d) all intercompany investments, receivables and payables are eliminated in the determination of each segment's assets and liabilities; and (e) deferred income tax assets and liabilities are not allocated.

Segment Operating Results

	Year ended December 31, 2018		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Revenue from external customers	\$134,496	\$ 5,255	\$139,751
Intersegment sale	3,363	191	3,554
Interest expense	1,779	3	1,782
Income (loss) before income taxes	183,395	(15,566)	167,829
	Year ended December 31, 2017		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Revenue from external customers	\$256,412	\$ 17,623	\$274,035
Intersegment sale	1,668	204	1,872
Interest expense	4,931	—	4,931
Loss before income taxes	(28,254)	(10,153)	(38,407)

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 6. Business Segment Information (continued)

	Year ended December 31, 2016		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Revenue from external customers	\$1,095,896	\$35,761	\$1,131,657
Intersegment sale	1,975	360	2,335
Interest expense	15,751	—	15,751
Loss before income taxes	(13,785)	(2,921)	(16,706)
	As at December 31, 2018		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Segment assets	\$458,998	\$47,915	\$506,913
	As at December 31, 2017		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Segment assets	\$343,649	\$53,298	\$396,947
	As at December 31, 2018		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Segment liabilities	\$106,651	\$5,856	\$112,507
	As at December 31, 2017		
	Merchant banking	All other	Total
Segment liabilities	\$106,713	\$10,285	\$116,998

Geographic Information

Due to the highly integrated nature of international products and services, merchant banking activities and markets, and a significant portion of the Group's activities requiring cross-border coordination in order to serve the Group's customers and clients, the methodology for allocating the Group's profitability to geographic regions is dependent on estimates and management judgment.

Geographic results are generally determined as follows:

Segment	Basis for attributing revenue
Merchant banking	Locations of external customers or the reporting units, whichever is appropriate
All other	Locations of the reporting units

Due to the nature of cross-border business, the Group presents its geographic information by geographic regions, instead of by countries. The following table presents revenue from external customers by geographic region of such customers:

Years ended December 31:	2018	2017	2016
Canada	\$ 13,035	\$ 19,595	\$ 28,328
Germany	51,867	122,643	280,552
Africa	4,254	4,283	32,519
Americas	1,786	22,446	256,598
Asia	1,549	14,894	113,821
Europe	67,260	90,174	419,839
	<u>\$139,751</u>	<u>\$274,035</u>	<u>\$1,131,657</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 6. Business Segment Information (continued)

Except for the geographic concentrations as indicated in the above table and a customer in the merchant banking segment located in Slovakia representing approximately 16% of the Group's revenue for the year ended December 31, 2018, there were no other revenue concentrations during the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016.

The following table presents non-current assets other than financial instruments, deferred income tax assets and other non-current assets by geographic area based upon the location of the assets.

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Canada	\$297,537	\$144,452
Africa	33,258	32,258
Asia	20	889
Europe	52,914	52,501
	<u>\$383,729</u>	<u>\$230,100</u>

Note 7. Securities

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
<u>Short-term securities</u>		
Equity securities at FVTPL, publicly traded	\$1,072	\$ 6
Debt securities at FVOCI	6,328	—
Debt securities available for sale	—	5,121
	<u>\$7,400</u>	<u>\$5,127</u>
<u>Long-term securities</u>		
Equity securities at FVTPL, publicly traded	\$ 701	\$ —
Equity securities at FVTPL, privately held	4001	—
Equity securities available for sale, publicly traded	—	771
	<u>\$4,702</u>	<u>\$ 771</u>

Equity securities available for sale of \$771 as at December 31, 2017 were reclassified to equity securities at FVTPL upon the initial adoption of IFRS 9 on January 1, 2018.

Note 8. Trade Receivables

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Trade receivables, gross amount	\$5,654	\$43,207
Less: Allowance for expected credit losses under IFRS 9 or credit losses under IAS 39	(311)	(8,948)
Trade receivables, net amount	<u>\$5,343</u>	<u>\$34,259</u>

All trade receivables comprise accounts from contracts with customers and primarily arise from merchant banking activities.

The Group has two non-recourse factoring arrangements with banks for trade receivables (see Note 15).

As at December 31, 2018, trade receivables of \$311 were credit-impaired and a loss allowance for lifetime expected credit losses of \$311 were recognized.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 8. Trade Receivables (continued)

The movement in the loss allowance during the year ended December 31, 2018 was as follows:

	Loss allowance measured at an amount equal to lifetime expected credit losses		
	Financial assets that are credit-impaired at year-end	Other trade receivables	Total
Loss allowance: opening balance	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Reclassification from IAS 39 upon initial adoption of IFRS 9	8,948	—	8,948
Additions for the year	21,817	87	21,904
Reversal	—	—	—
Written off	(30,935)	—	(30,935)
Exchange effect	184	10	194
Other	—	200	200
Loss allowance: ending balance	<u>\$ 14</u>	<u>\$297</u>	<u>\$ 311</u>

The allowance for expected credit losses under IFRS 9 as of January 1, 2018 and the allowance for credit losses under IAS 39 as of December 31, 2017 were of the same amount. As a result, no adjustment nor reconciliation was required when the Group adopted IFRS 9 on January 1, 2018.

In accordance with IFRS 9, management reviews the expected credit losses for the following twelve months based upon, among other things, the credit-worthiness of the exposure, collateral and other risk mitigation instruments, and the nature of the underlying business transaction. There have been no financial instruments acquired whose credit risk has increased substantially since initial recognition.

As at December 31, 2017, trade receivables of \$11,352 were past due but not impaired. The aging analysis of these trade receivables as at December 31, 2017 are as follows:

<u>Past-due</u>	<u>2017</u>
Below 30 days	\$ 7,322
Between 31 and 60 days	728
Between 61 and 90 days	1,175
Between 91 and 365 days	1,813
Over 365 days	314
	<u>\$11,352</u>

As at December 31, 2017, trade receivables of \$30,337 were impaired and an allowance for credit losses of \$8,948 has been provided. Not all past-due account balances are uncollectible as most of the accounts are covered by credit insurance or other collection procedures. Credit risk from trade account receivables is mitigated since they are credit insured, covered by letters of credit, bank guarantees and/or other credit enhancements (see Note 29).

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 8. Trade Receivables (continued)

The aging analyses of impaired trade receivables as at December 31, 2017 are as follows:

<u>Past-due</u>	<u>2017</u>
Below 30 days	\$ —
Between 31 and 60 days	—
Between 61 and 90 days	—
Between 91 and 365 days	—
Over 365 days	30,337
	<u>30,337</u>
Allowance for credit losses	(8,948)
Expected recoverable amount of impaired trade receivables ⁽¹⁾	<u>\$21,389</u>

(1) The recoverable amount of impaired trade receivables is covered by credit insurance, bank guarantees and/or other credit enhancements and, therefore, management of the Group believes this entire net amount to be collectible in the ordinary course of business.

The movement in the allowance for credit losses during the year ended December 31, 2017 was as follows:

	<u>2017</u>
Balance, beginning of the year	\$ 58,488
Additions	12,213
Reversals	(1,541)
Write-offs	(7,726)
Disposition of subsidiaries	(33,999)
Other	(21,099)
Currency translation adjustment	2,612
Balance, end of the year	<u>\$ 8,948</u>

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Group received proceeds of \$39,149 from risk mitigation assets, of which \$35,121 was credited to profit or loss through a recovery of credit losses and the remainder was credited to trade receivables.

As at December 31, 2016, management of the Group reviewed the underlying contracts, legal documents, credit enhancement instruments and collateral to assess the recoverability of outstanding amounts related to a former insolvent customer, and recognized a cumulative allowance for credit losses of \$43,943 in connection with this former customer group as at December 31, 2016, including an additional provision of \$33,301 which was recognized during the second quarter of 2016. After the recognition of such impairment losses, the Group had net trade receivables of \$100,008 due from this former customer group as at December 31, 2016.

During 2017, management of the Group continued to monitor and assess the collectability of the receivables. As a result of such reviews, the Group reversed and credited an allowance of \$1,541 to profit or loss in the third quarter. During the fourth quarter, the Group deconsolidated subsidiaries which had trade receivables due from this former customer group (see Note 31). Furthermore, the Group increased the valuation allowance by \$224 based on its revision of expected future cash flows. As such, the Group had net trade receivables of \$21,375 due from this former customer group as at December 31, 2017.

During 2018, management recognized a further credit loss of \$21,812 and subsequently wrote off the remaining receivable balance from this former customer group as management determined the amount to be uncollectible. The maximum amount of credit risk, without taking into account any collateral or other credit enhancements, is equal to the carrying value of our receivables. The Group intends to pursue, where commercially reasonable, the recovery of receivables which have been impaired historically.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 9. Other Receivables

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Royalty income from contracts with customers (net of an allowance of \$nil and \$1,425, respectively)	\$ —	\$ 4,525
Contract assets under contracts with customers	295	876
Suppliers with debit balance	—	293
Loans	6,087	321
Other	2,293	15,675
	<u>\$8,675</u>	<u>\$21,690</u>

Other receivables primarily arise in the normal course of business and are expected to be collected within one year from the reporting date.

Royalty income receivables as of December 31, 2017 included \$5,300 which had been disputed. Management of the Group reviewed the facts relating to the royalty receivables with its legal advisors, believing that the dispute was without merit, and determined that it was probable that the receivables would be recovered as the payments were held in trust. However, in March 2018 there was a court judgment which was not in favor of the Group, and the Group appealed. As a result of the initial court judgment, the Group provided \$1,425 as a valuation allowance for the royalty income receivables as of December 31, 2017. In the second quarter of 2018, a higher court refused to grant leave to the Group to appeal the lower court judgment, and as a result, the Group wrote off the remaining receivable balance of \$3,875 during the year ended December 31, 2018.

The movement of contract assets under contracts with customers for the year ended December 31, 2018 was as follows:

	<u>2018</u>
Balance, beginning of the year	\$ 876
A change in the time frame for a right to consideration to become unconditional	(581)
Balance, end of the year	<u>\$ 295</u>

Note 10. Inventories

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Raw materials	\$ 3,640	\$3,632
Work-in-progress	3,568	3,444
Finished goods	1,960	1,440
Commodity inventories	2,238	1,310
	<u>\$11,406</u>	<u>\$9,826</u>
 Comprising:		
Inventories contracted at fixed prices or hedged	\$ 9,432	\$8,160
Inventories – other	1,974	1,666
	<u>\$11,406</u>	<u>\$9,826</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 11. Investment Property

All of the Group's investment property is located in Europe.

<u>Changes in investment property included in non-current assets:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Balance, beginning of year	\$37,660	\$35,663
Change in fair value during the year	(274)	(26)
Disposals	(976)	(194)
Currency translation adjustments	1,394	2,217
Balance, end of year	<u>\$37,804</u>	<u>\$37,660</u>

The amounts recognized in profit or loss in relation to investment property during the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 are as follows:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Rental income	\$1,611	\$1,510	\$1,511
Direct operating expenses (including repairs and maintenance) arising from investment property during the year	193	256	226

Note 12. Property, Plant and Equipment

The following changes in property, plant and equipment were recorded during the year ended December 31, 2018:

<u>Costs</u>	<u>Opening balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Disposals</u>	<u>Dispositions of subsidiaries</u>	<u>Impairments</u>	<u>Currency translation adjustments</u>	<u>Ending balance</u>
Refinery and power plants	\$92,434	\$ —	\$(148)	\$(27,214)	\$ —	\$3,487	\$68,559
Processing plant and equipment	3,703	88	(25)	—	(42)	37	3,761
Office equipment	1,135	340	(56)	—	(4)	35	1,450
	<u>\$97,272</u>	<u>\$428</u>	<u>\$(229)</u>	<u>\$(27,214)</u>	<u>\$(46)</u>	<u>\$3,559</u>	<u>\$73,770</u>
 <u>Accumulated depreciation</u>							
Refinery and power plants	\$11,047	\$2,775	\$(148)	\$(1,668)	\$ —	\$757	\$12,763
Processing plant and equipment	1,626	255	(10)	—	(27)	29	1,873
Office equipment	645	211	(60)	—	(4)	17	809
	<u>13,318</u>	<u>\$3,241</u>	<u>\$(218)</u>	<u>\$(1,668)</u>	<u>\$(31)</u>	<u>\$803</u>	<u>15,445</u>
Net book value	<u>\$83,954</u>						<u>\$58,325</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 12. Property, Plant and Equipment (continued)

The following changes in property, plant and equipment were recorded during the year ended December 31, 2017:

Costs	Opening balance	Additions	Disposals	Dispositions of subsidiaries*	Reclassified from inventories	Impairments	Currency translation adjustments	Ending balance
Land and buildings	\$ 944	\$ 26	\$ —	\$(1,221)	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 251	\$ —
Refinery and power plants	91,392	—	—	—	3,786	—	(2,744)	92,434
Processing plant and equipment	18,880	987	(8,678)	57	—	(7,863)	320	3,703
Office equipment	5,189	300	(1,343)	(3,163)	—	—	152	1,135
	<u>\$116,405</u>	<u>\$1,313</u>	<u>\$(10,021)</u>	<u>\$(4,327)</u>	<u>\$3,786</u>	<u>\$(7,863)</u>	<u>\$ (2,021)</u>	<u>\$97,272</u>

* Net of acquisition of a subsidiary

Accumulated depreciation	Opening balance	Additions	Disposals	Dispositions of subsidiaries	Impairments	Currency translation adjustments	Ending balance
Land and buildings	\$ 208	\$ 344	\$ —	\$ (598)	\$ —	\$ 46	\$ —
Refinery and power plants	9,308	2,267	—	—	—	(528)	11,047
Processing plant and equipment	3,545	1,377	(2,294)	(27)	(1,223)	248	1,626
Office equipment	3,901	384	(1,118)	(2,639)	—	117	645
	<u>16,962</u>	<u>\$4,372</u>	<u>\$(3,412)</u>	<u>\$(3,264)</u>	<u>\$(1,223)</u>	<u>\$ (117)</u>	<u>13,318</u>
Net book value	<u>\$99,443</u>						<u>\$83,954</u>

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Group deconsolidated a subsidiary which owned a power plant (see Note 31).

During the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 respectively, no expenditures were recognized in the carrying amounts of items of property, plant and equipment in the course of their construction.

Note 13. Interests in Resource Properties

The Group's interests in resource properties as at December 31, 2018 and 2017 comprised the following:

	2018	2017
Interest in an iron ore mine	\$218,203	\$30,000
Hydrocarbon development and production assets	38,040	40,849
Exploration and evaluation assets – hydrocarbon probable reserves	12,367	12,367
Exploration and evaluation assets – hydrocarbon undeveloped lands	4,640	9,335
	<u>\$273,250</u>	<u>\$92,551</u>

The movements in the interest in an iron ore mine and hydrocarbon development and production assets included in non-current assets during the year ended December 31, 2018 were as follows:

Costs	Opening balance	Decommissioning obligations	Reversal of impairment losses	Ending balance
Interest in an iron ore mine	\$30,000	\$ —	\$188,203	\$218,203
Hydrocarbon development and production assets	45,871	(338)	—	45,533
	<u>\$75,871</u>	<u>\$ (338)</u>	<u>\$188,203</u>	<u>\$263,736</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 13. Interests in Resource Properties (continued)

<u>Accumulated depreciation</u>	<u>Opening balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reversal of impairment losses</u>	<u>Ending balance</u>
Interest in an iron ore mine	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Hydrocarbon development and production assets	5,022	2,471	—	7,493
	<u>5,022</u>	<u>\$2,471</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>7,493</u>
Net book value	<u>\$70,849</u>			<u>\$256,243</u>

The movements in the interest in an iron ore mine and hydrocarbon development and production assets included in non-current assets during the year ended December 31, 2017 were as follows:

<u>Costs</u>	<u>Opening balance</u>	<u>Decommissioning obligations</u>	<u>Reversal of impairment losses</u>	<u>Ending balance</u>
Interest in an iron ore mine	\$30,000	\$ —	\$ —	\$30,000
Hydrocarbon development and production assets	32,353	254	13,264	45,871
	<u>\$62,353</u>	<u>\$ 254</u>	<u>\$13,264</u>	<u>\$75,871</u>

<u>Accumulated depreciation</u>	<u>Opening balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reversal of impairment losses</u>	<u>Ending balance</u>
Interest in an iron ore mine	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Hydrocarbon development and production assets	2,661	2,361	—	5,022
	<u>2,661</u>	<u>\$2,361</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>5,022</u>
Carrying amount	<u>\$59,692</u>			<u>\$70,849</u>

The movements in exploration and evaluation assets presented as hydrocarbon probable reserves and undeveloped lands during the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 were as follows:

	<u>2018</u>		<u>2017</u>	
	<u>Probable reserves</u>	<u>Undeveloped lands</u>	<u>Probable reserves</u>	<u>Undeveloped lands</u>
Balance, beginning of year	\$12,367	\$ 9,335	\$ 9,416	\$10,039
Additions	—	—	—	—
Disposal	—	(4,695)	—	(74)
Reversal (recognition) of impairment (losses)	—	—	2,951	(630)
Balance, end of year	<u>\$12,367</u>	<u>\$ 4,640</u>	<u>\$12,367</u>	<u>\$ 9,335</u>

Interest in an iron ore mine

The Group derives revenue from a mining sub-lease of the lands upon which the Scully iron ore mine is situated in Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada. The sub-lease commenced in 1956 and expires in 2055. The iron ore deposit is currently sub-leased to a third-party entity under certain lease agreements which will also expire in 2055. Pursuant and subject to the terms of the lease agreements, the Group collects royalty payments directly from a third-party operator based on a pre-determined formula, with a minimum payment not to be less than \$3,250 per year.

In 2017, a third party (the new operator) acquired the mine out of proceedings under the Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (Canada). In 2018, the new operator announced that it had completed the financing for the mining operations on the iron ore mine and planned to recommence the operations in the summer of 2019. As a result of these new developments, management re-assessed whether there was any

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 13. Interests in Resource Properties (continued)

indication that previously recognized impairments for the asset might no longer exist or might have decreased. Pursuant to the re-assessment study of which the future cash flows were discounted at 8.3% per annum, management concluded that the previously recognized impairment loss of \$188,203 should be reversed.

Hydrocarbon properties

The Group owns hydrocarbon properties in western Canada. The majority of such operations are located in the Deep Basin fairway of the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin. The Group's hydrocarbon development and production assets include producing natural gas wells, non-producing natural gas wells, producing oil wells and non-producing oil wells, but do not include a land position that includes net working interests in undeveloped acreage and properties containing probable reserves only, both of which are included in exploration and evaluation assets.

The recoverable amounts of the Group's hydrocarbon CGUs are determined whenever facts and circumstances provide impairment indicators. CGU's are mainly determined based upon the geographical region of the Group's producing properties. The recoverable amounts of each CGU are based on the fair value less costs of disposal methodology. The fair value less cost of disposal in the absence of a market price for the CGU is estimated by applying post-tax cash flow projections incorporating management's best estimates of future natural gas prices, production based on current estimates of recoverable reserves and resources, exploration potential, future operating costs, non-expansionary capital expenditures and inflation.

On December 31, 2016, the Group performed an impairment assessment on its hydrocarbon properties utilizing a post-tax discount rate of 10% and recognized a net non-cash reversal of impairment losses of \$8,566, of which \$7,672 were allocated to development and production assets and \$1,684 to probable reserves and an impairment loss of \$790 was allocated to undeveloped lands. The related deferred income tax expense for 2016 was \$2,526. On December 31, 2017, the Group performed an impairment assessment on its hydrocarbon properties utilizing a post-tax discount rate of 11% and recognized a net non-cash reversal of impairment losses of \$15,585, of which \$13,264 were allocated to development and production assets and \$2,951 to probable reserves and an impairment loss of \$630 was allocated to undeveloped lands. On December 31, 2018, the Group performed an impairment assessment on its hydrocarbon properties utilizing a post-tax discount rate of 9.25% and no impairments or reversals of impairments were recognized.

Note 14. Deferred Income Tax Assets and Liabilities

The tax effect of temporary differences and tax loss carry-forwards that give rise to significant components of the Group's deferred income tax assets and liabilities are as follows:

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
		<u>(Restated)</u>
Non-capital tax loss carry-forwards	\$ 26,363	\$ 25,504
Interests in resource properties	(56,904)	(10,536)
Other assets	(8,800)	(4,817)
Other liabilities	(11,345)	(3,760)
	<u>\$(50,686)</u>	<u>\$ 6,391</u>
Presented on the consolidated statements of financial position as follows:		
Deferred income tax assets	\$ 15,735	\$ 16,694
Deferred income tax liabilities	(66,421)	(10,303)
Net	<u>\$(50,686)</u>	<u>\$ 6,391</u>

As at December 31, 2018, the Group had estimated accumulated non-capital losses, which expire in the following countries as follows. Management is of the opinion that not all of these non-capital losses are probable to be utilized in the future.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 14. Deferred Income Tax Assets and Liabilities (continued)

<u>Country</u>	<u>Gross amount</u>	<u>Amount for which no deferred income tax asset is recognized</u>	<u>Expiration dates</u>
Canada	\$19,911	\$ 13	2035-2038
Germany	2,738	—	Indefinite
Austria	6,125	6,125	Indefinite
China	226	226	2023
Malta	98,752	70,056	Indefinite
Uganda	33,544	—	Indefinite

The utilization of the deferred tax assets is dependent on future taxable profits in excess of the profits arising from the reversal of existing taxable temporary differences and the Group companies have suffered losses in either the current or preceding period(s) in the tax jurisdictions to which the deferred tax assets relate.

A former affiliate received notices of tax reassessments from taxation authorities relating to prior periods, which denied certain deductions, losses and credits, and included income in the computation of income taxes payable. The former affiliate has objected or will object to such reassessment notices and has appealed certain federal assessments in court. Based on, among other things, the Group's consultation with its advisors and review of the reassessments, the material facts related thereto and the subject transactions, management determined that the probability of the reassessments being successful in court was remote. Accordingly, the Group did not record any liability in prior years in connection with such reassessments. While the Group is not a party to these proceedings, there can be no assurance that the former affiliate will be successful and, if unsuccessful, that there will not be potential claims made against the Group in relation thereto.

The Group companies' income tax, value-added tax and payroll tax filings are also subject to audit by taxation authorities in numerous jurisdictions. There are audits in progress and items under review, some of which may increase the Group's income tax, value-added tax and payroll tax liability. In the event that management's estimate of the future resolution of these matters changes, the Group will recognize the effects of the changes in its consolidated financial statements in the appropriate period relative to when such changes occur.

Note 15. Short-term Bank Borrowings

Short-term bank borrowings are repayable within a year from the borrowing date. They are used to finance the Group's day-to-day merchant banking business.

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Credit facilities from banks	\$ —	\$2,074

As at December 31, 2018, the Group had credit facilities aggregating \$22,343 as follows: (a) non-recourse factoring lines for receivables financing of \$20,297; and (b) a commodity hedging credit facility of \$2,046 which allows management to hedge industrial metals and products for the Group's production subsidiaries. All these facilities are renewable on a yearly basis or usable until further notice.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 16. Debt

Certain of the Group's subsidiaries entered into long-term debt agreements with numerous banks and financial institutions. These agreements, which included customary terms and conditions in accordance with industry standards for unsecured facilities, include:

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Due to a bank, US\$nil and US\$19,430 at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively . . .	\$ —	\$24,374
Due to a bank, €nil and €13,605 at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively	—	19,359
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$43,733</u>
Current portion	\$ —	\$43,733
Long-term portion	—	—
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$43,733</u>

For additional information, see Note 27.

All long-term debt was classified to current liabilities as at December 31, 2017. The Group did not have debt outstanding as of December 31, 2018.

No interest expense was capitalized and included in property, plant and equipment during the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016.

Note 17. Account Payables and Accrued Expenses

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Trade and account payables	\$18,849	\$39,528
Value-added, goods and services and other taxes (other than income taxes)	831	2,559
Compensation	247	392
Contract liabilities under contracts with customers	6,388	769
Provision for guarantee	—	1,502
	<u>\$26,315</u>	<u>\$44,750</u>

Trade payables arise from the Group's day-to-day activities. The Group's expenses for services and other operational expenses are included in account payables. Generally, these payables and accrual accounts do not bear interest and have a maturity of less than one year.

In February 2018, the calling of a guarantee resulted in a provision for credit loss of \$1,502 as at December 31, 2017. During the year ended December 31, 2018, the credit loss resulting from the calling of the guarantee was reduced by \$833. The provision for the guarantee was no longer outstanding as at December 31, 2018.

The movement of contract liabilities under contracts with customers for the year ended December 31, 2018 was as follows:

	<u>2018</u>
Balance, beginning of the year	\$ 797
A change in the time frame for a performance obligation to be satisfied	6,839
Balance, end of the year	<u>\$7,636</u>

The Group expects to recognize the contract liabilities as revenue in the following years:

2019 (included in current liabilities)	\$6,388
2020 (included in long-term liabilities)	1,248
	<u>\$7,636</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 18. Accrued Pension Obligations

At December 31, 2016, the Group had post-retirement defined benefit plans for certain of its employees in Europe. During the fourth quarter of 2017, the aforesaid subsidiaries were deconsolidated alongside the defined benefit obligations and the related plan assets, which had net accrued pension obligations of \$2,593 at the time of the disposals. As at December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Group did not have any post-retirement defined benefit plans and its defined benefit obligations and fair value of the related plan assets were both \$nil.

Note 19. Decommissioning Obligations

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Decommissioning obligations, beginning of year	\$13,699	\$13,219
Changes in estimates	(338)	255
Accretion	280	225
Decommissioning obligations, end of year	<u>\$13,641</u>	<u>\$13,699</u>

Decommissioning obligations represent the present value of estimated remediation and reclamation costs associated with hydrocarbon properties and property, plant and equipment. As at December 31, 2018, management revised its estimates of the expected decommissioning obligations related to its hydrocarbon production and processing assets. The Group discounted the decommissioning obligations using an average discount rate of 1.98% (2017: 1.98%), which is the risk-free rate in Canada for blended government securities.

The Group's decommissioning obligations are unsecured and will be funded from future cash flows from operations.

Note 20. Shareholders' Equity

Capital Stock

The authorized share capital of MFC Bancorp is US\$450,000 divided into 300,000,000 common shares of US\$0.001 par value each and 150,000,000 preference shares divided into US\$0.001 par value each.

Holders of common shares may receive dividends declared by the Company in accordance with the Company's memorandum and articles of association, subject to any preferential dividend rights of any other classes or series of preference shares issued and outstanding. Holders of common shares are entitled to one vote per share at any general or special meeting of shareholders. The holders of common shares have the right on the winding up or dissolution of the Company to participate in the surplus assets of the Company in accordance with the provisions of the memorandum and articles of association of the Company, subject to the rights of any issued and outstanding preference shares.

All of the Company's issued capital stock is fully paid.

Treasury Stock

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Total number of common shares held as treasury stock	<u>65,647</u>	<u>65,647</u>
Total carrying amount of treasury stock	<u>\$ 2,643</u>	<u>\$ 2,643</u>

All of the Company's treasury stock is held by wholly-owned subsidiaries.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 21. Consolidated Statements of Operations

Revenue

The Group's revenue comprised:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Merchant banking products and services	\$124,059	\$249,581	\$1,078,745
Interest	676	973	3,056
Dividends	168	—	6
Gain on securities, net	3,856	—	—
Other, including medical and real estate sectors	10,992	23,481	49,850
Revenue	<u>\$139,751</u>	<u>\$274,035</u>	<u>\$1,131,657</u>

The revenue of \$124,059 from merchant banking products and services for the year ended December 31, 2018 comprised metals of \$107,540, natural gas of \$10,371, change in royalty revenue estimate of (\$2,437), power and electricity of \$4,254 and fees of \$4,331. Revenue from merchant banking products are generally recognized from contracts with customers.

The revenue of \$249,581 from merchant banking products and services for the year ended December 31, 2017 comprised metals of \$143,572, plastics of \$98, steel products of \$23,898, minerals, chemicals and alloys of \$57,768, natural gas of \$8,931, royalties of \$8,868, power and electricity of \$4,215 and fees of \$2,231.

The Group's revenue includes the revenue of the metals processing acquisition from October 1, 2017 and the Bank from February 1, 2016 in its merchant banking segment.

In December 2016, the Group disposed of certain non-core commodities subsidiaries. Effective January 31, 2017, the Group completed the sale of a non-core commodities trading subsidiary which focused on Latin America. Effective October 1, 2017, the Group disposed of certain subsidiaries, including certain commodities trading subsidiaries in Europe. In September 2018, the Group disposed of certain European subsidiaries which did not have significant business activities.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, management of the Group reclassified certain revenue related to its iron ore royalty interest to contract liabilities. This was accounted for as a change in accounting estimates under IAS 8 and, as a result, during the year ended December 31, 2018, the Group reversed \$2,437 which was previously recognized as revenue in the year ended December 31, 2017 and classified the amount to contract liabilities.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Group recognized \$5,619 for the underpayment of resource property royalties from prior years, which was included in revenue from merchant banking products and services.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 21. Consolidated Statements of Operations (continued)

Expenses

The Group's costs of sales and services comprised:

<u>Years Ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Merchant banking products and services	\$ 119,552	\$ 223,049	\$ 1,027,627
Credit losses on loans and receivables and guarantees, net of recoveries	34,985*	23,923*	17,023*
Market value decrease (increase) on commodity inventories	109	(400)	4,273
Loss (gain) on derivative contracts, net	794	(1,934)	521
Loss on securities, net	—	619	116
Dispositions of subsidiaries	(25,771)	10,219	(2,585)
Gains on settlements of liabilities	(9,502)	(3,779)	—
Change in fair value of loan payable at FVTPL	167	—	—
Other, including medical and real estate sectors	9,188	11,889	14,077
Total costs of sales and services	<u>\$ 129,522</u>	<u>\$ 263,586</u>	<u>\$ 1,061,052</u>

* Includes credit losses of \$9,957 on receivables due from former consolidated entities in the year ended December 31, 2018 (2017: \$8,585 and 2016: \$11,296).

The Group included the following items in costs of sales and services:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Inventories as costs of goods sold (including depreciation, amortization and depletion expenses allocated to costs of goods sold)	\$ 92,138	\$ 206,644	\$ 974,497

The Group's selling, general and administrative expenses comprised:

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Compensation (wages and salaries)	\$10,305	\$16,369
Legal and professional	4,469	8,860
Accounting	1,784	1,979
Consulting and fees	4,276	5,506
Depreciation and amortization	254	1,640
Office	1,026	1,797
Other	4,251	9,321
	<u>\$26,365</u>	<u>\$45,472</u>

Additional information on the nature of expenses incurred in continuing operations

<u>Years Ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Depreciation, amortization and depletion	\$ 5,712	\$ 6,732	\$ 11,951
Employee benefits expenses*	18,403	21,016	31,890

* Employee benefits expenses do not include the directors' fees. For directors' fees, please see Note 28.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 21. Consolidated Statements of Operations (continued)

During the year ended December 31, 2018, certain of the Group's subsidiaries entered into a court-approved settlement agreement related to proceedings respecting the insolvent estate of certain of our former hydrocarbon subsidiaries. As a result of the settlement, the Group incurred a non-cash charge of \$5,600, which was the carrying value of assets which the Group contributed under the settlement.

During the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the deconsolidation of subsidiaries resulted in a reclassification of cumulative currency translation adjustment loss of \$672 and gain of \$11,306, respectively, from accumulated other comprehensive income within equity to exchange differences on foreign currency transactions in profit or loss.

Note 22. Share-Based Compensation

The 2017 Equity Incentive Plan, referred to as the "2017 Plan", was adopted by the Company on July 14, 2017.

Pursuant to the terms of the 2017 Plan, the board of directors, the Compensation Committee or such other committee as is appointed by the board of directors to administer the Incentive Plan, may grant stock options, restricted stock rights, restricted stock, performance share awards, performance share units and stock appreciation rights under the 2017 Plan, establish the terms and conditions for those awards, construe and interpret the 2017 Plan and establish the rules for the 2017 Plan's administration. Such awards may be granted to employees, non-employee directors, officers or consultants of ours or any affiliate or any person to whom an offer of employment with the Group or any affiliate is extended. Such committee has the authority to determine which employees, non-employee directors, officers, consultants and prospective employees should receive such awards.

Subject to adjustment for changes in capitalization, the total number of Common Shares subject to all awards under the 2017 Plan is 575,403 Common Shares.

Pursuant to a plan of arrangement which was completed in 2017, 40,000 options were issued under the 2017 Plan in exchange for options issued and outstanding under a previous equity incentive plan.

In December 2017, the Company issued 535,000 options to directors, officers, employees and consultants with an exercise price of US\$8.76 per Common Share and an expiry date of December 1, 2027.

On May 12, 2018, a Group executive surrendered for cancellation 20,000 options to purchase the Company's common shares. On the same date, the Company granted to a different employee options to purchase 20,000 of the Company's common shares at an exercise price of US\$8.76 per share. The options vested immediately and expire on December 1, 2027.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 22. Share-Based Compensation (continued)

The following table is a summary of the changes in stock options granted under the plans:

	2017 Plan		2008 Plan		1997 Plan	
	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price per share (US\$)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price per share (US\$)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price per share (US\$)
Outstanding as at December 31, 2015	—	—	172,000	39.15	274,500	39.05
Expired	—	—	(132,000)	39.05	(274,500)	39.05
Outstanding as at December 31, 2016	—	—	40,000	40.05	—	—
Exchanged under the plan of arrangement	40,000	40.05	(40,000)	40.05	—	—
Granted	535,000	8.76	—	—	—	—
Outstanding as at December 31, 2017	575,000	10.94	—	—	—	—
Forfeited	(125,000)	13.77	—	—	—	—
Cancelled	(20,000)	40.05	—	—	—	—
Granted	20,000	8.76	—	—	—	—
Outstanding as at December 31, 2018	<u>450,000</u>		<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>
As at December 31, 2018:						
Options exercisable	<u>450,000</u>	8.76	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>
Options available for granting in future periods	<u>125,403</u>		<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>

The following table summarizes information about stock options outstanding and exercisable as at December 31, 2018:

Exercise Price per Share (US\$)	Options Outstanding and Exercisable	
	Number outstanding	Weighted average remaining contractual life (in years)
\$8.76	<u>450,000</u>	8.92

The following table summarizes the share-based compensation expenses recognized by the Group:

Years ended December 31:	2018	2017	2016
Share-based compensation expenses arising from stock options granted by the Company	<u>\$ 69</u>	<u>\$ 2,876</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

On May 12, 2018, the Company granted to an employee options to purchase 20,000 MFC Bancorp common shares at an exercise price of US\$8.76 per share. The options vested immediately and expire on December 1, 2027.

On December 1, 2017, the Company granted to certain employees options to purchase 535,000 MFC Bancorp common shares in aggregate at an exercise price of US\$8.76 per share. The options vested immediately and expire on December 1, 2027.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 22. Share-Based Compensation (continued)

The weighted average assumptions and inputs used in calculating the fair value of the stock options granted on May 12, 2018 and December 1, 2017, respectively, using the Black-Scholes-Merton formula are as follows:

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Number of options granted	20,000	535,000
Vesting requirements	Immediately	Immediately
Contractual life	9.54 years	10 years
Method of settlement	In equity	In equity
Exercise price per share	US\$8.76	US\$8.76
Market price per share on grant date	US\$6.30	US\$8.40
Expected volatility	37.86%	37.74%
Expected option life	9.54 years	10 years
Expected dividends	0.00%	0.00%
Risk-free interest rate	2.93%	2.38%
Fair value of option granted (per option)	\$3.44(US\$2.69)	\$5.38(US\$4.22)

The expected volatility was determined based on the historical price movement over the expected option life, with adjustments for underlying businesses. The stock option holders are not entitled to dividends or dividend equivalents until the options are exercised.

The aggregate fair value of options granted was \$69 and \$2,876, respectively, which was recognized as share-based compensation expense in the Group's consolidated statement of operations, for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017.

Note 23. Income Taxes

Income (loss) before income taxes comprised:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Canada	\$170,538	\$ 7,360	\$ 380
Outside Canada	(2,709)	(45,767)	(17,086)
	<u>\$167,829</u>	<u>\$(38,407)</u>	<u>\$(16,706)</u>

The components of income tax expense comprised:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Current taxes	\$ (867)	\$(3,744)	\$(4,540)
Deferred taxes	(55,238)	(3,141)	(1,454)
Resource revenue recovery (expense)	487	(1,773)	(1,020)
	<u>\$(55,618)</u>	<u>\$(8,658)</u>	<u>\$(7,014)</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 23. Income Taxes (continued)

A reconciliation of income (loss) before income taxes to the provision for income taxes in the consolidated statements of operations is as follows:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Income (loss) before income taxes	\$167,829	\$(38,407)	\$(16,706)
Computed (expense) recovery of income taxes	\$ (50,137)	\$ 9,792	\$ 4,344
Decrease (increase) in income taxes resulting from:			
Subsidiaries' tax rate differences	—	—	714
Other non-taxable income	45	7	6,057
Revisions to prior years	(1,355)	4,650	(112)
Taxable capital gains and losses on dispositions, net	(5,357)	(3,150)	(3,543)
Resource property revenue taxes	356	(1,311)	(755)
Unrecognized losses in current year	(1,411)	(20,916)	(15,623)
Previously unrecognized deferred income tax assets, net	3,041	2,877	5,747
Permanent differences	(306)	(363)	(1,448)
Other, net	(494)	(244)	(2,395)
Provision for income taxes	<u>\$ (55,618)</u>	<u>\$ (8,658)</u>	<u>\$ (7,014)</u>

For the year ended December 31, 2016, the Group's income tax recovery was computed at the statutory tax rate of 26%. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the income tax expense and recovery were computed at the domestic tax rates applicable to the countries concerned. MFC Bancorp has a zero tax rate under its tax jurisdiction since 2017.

In addition, the aggregate current and deferred income tax relating to items that are charged directly to other comprehensive income or loss was an expense of \$nil for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016.

Note 24. Earnings Per Share

Earnings per share data for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 are summarized as follows:

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Basic income (loss) attributable to holders of common shares	\$ 112,276	\$ (47,855)	\$ (25,361)
Effect of dilutive securities:	—	—	—
Diluted income (loss)	<u>\$ 112,276</u>	<u>\$ (47,855)</u>	<u>\$ (25,361)</u>
	<u>Number of Shares</u>		
	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding – basic	12,534,801	12,544,141	12,628,454
Effect of dilutive securities:			
Options	—	—	—
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding – diluted	<u>12,534,801</u>	<u>12,544,141</u>	<u>12,628,454</u>

In 2018, 2017 and 2016, the Group's potential ordinary shares include stock options outstanding. In 2016, the potential ordinary shares also included contingently issuable shares pursuant to a share purchase agreement.

As at December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, there were 450,000, 575,000 and 40,000 stock options, respectively, outstanding that could potentially dilute basic earnings per share in the future, but were not included in the calculation of diluted earnings per share because they were antidilutive for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 25. Dividends Paid

The Company did not declare nor pay dividends in 2018, 2017 and 2016.

Note 26. Commitments and Contingencies

Leases as lessors

The Group leases out land and buildings and equipment under non-cancellable operating lease agreements. The leases have varying terms, subject to the customary practices in the particular regions.

Future minimum rentals under long-term non-cancellable operating leases are as follows:

<u>Years ending December 31:</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2019	\$1,020
2020	916
2021	645
2022	461
2023	28
Thereafter	14
	<u>\$3,084</u>

The Group recognized rental and lease income of \$3,273, \$6,026 and \$15,470 for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Leases as lessees

Future minimum commitments under long-term non-cancellable operating leases are as follows:

<u>Years ending December 31:</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2019	\$1,327
2020	927
2021	475
2022	455
2023	447
Thereafter	1,155
	<u>\$4,786</u>

The leases, which principally comprise office space, have varying terms, subject to the customary practices in the local regions. Minimum lease payments recognized as expenses were \$2,303 (including contingent rents of \$423), \$3,120 (including contingent rents of \$115) and \$2,565 (including sublease of \$734 and contingent rents of \$20) for the year ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Litigation

The Group is subject to routine litigation incidental to its business and is named from time to time as a defendant and is a plaintiff from time to time in various legal actions arising in connection with its activities, certain of which may include large claims for punitive damages. Further, due to the size, complexity and nature of the Group's operations, various legal and tax matters are outstanding from time to time, including periodic audit by various tax authorities. Currently, based upon information available, management does not believe any such matters would have a material adverse effect upon the Group's financial condition or results of operations as at December 31, 2018. However, due to the inherent uncertainty of litigation, there cannot be certainty as to the eventual outcome of any case. If management's current assessments are incorrect or if management is unable to resolve any of these matters favorably, there may be a material adverse impact on the Group's financial performance, cash flows or results of operations.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 26. Commitments and Contingencies (continued)

One of the Group's subsidiaries in Europe is disputing certain assessments by the relevant tax authorities related to the recoverability of certain value-added tax assets in prior fiscal years. The Group believes that the tax authorities' conclusions are contradictory to the relevant country and European Union laws, so the Group has appealed these matters locally. Management believes that it is more likely than not that it will be successful in these appeals, however the timing is unknown. The total amount of the assessments is \$1,853, of which \$488 has been paid in dispute. The amount of \$488 that has been paid has been reclassified as a long-term tax receivable to reflect the expected timing of recovery being longer than twelve months.

One of the Group's subsidiaries is disputing certain assessments by the relevant tax authorities related to expatriate staff payroll tax, and the Group has appealed these matters locally. Management believes that it is more likely than not that it will be successful in this appeal, however the timing is unknown. The total amount of the assessments is \$2,996 of which \$899 has been paid in dispute. The amount that has been paid has been written off due to management's expectations of probability of recovery.

Guarantees

Guarantees are accounted for as contingent liabilities unless it becomes probable that the Group will be required to make a payment under the guarantee.

In the normal course of its merchant banking activities, the Group issues guarantees to its trade and financing partners in order to secure financing facilities. Upon the use or drawdown of the underlying financing facilities, the financing facilities are recorded as liabilities on the consolidated statement of financial position such as short-term bank borrowings or debt. Accordingly, the issued guarantees relating to such financing facilities that are used or drawn are not considered contingent liabilities or off-balance sheet transactions. As at December 31, 2018, the Group did not have unrecorded contingent liabilities relating to outstanding guarantees issued to its trade and financing partners in the normal course of its merchant banking activities (see Note 29).

Rights to Subscribe to Shares in Subsidiaries

During 2017, two subsidiaries of the Group entered into agreements with third party employee incentive corporations whereby the latter were granted the rights to buy up to 10% of the share capital of the subsidiaries on a diluted basis at a price to be no less or more than the then existing net tangible asset value. The rights expire in 10 years.

Purchase Obligations

As at December 31, 2018, the Group had open purchase contracts aggregating \$686 due in 2019. None of these contracts have been recognized on the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 2018.

Note 27. Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows – Supplemental Disclosure

Interest paid and received, dividends received and income taxes paid are classified as operating activities. Dividends paid are classified as financing activities. Income taxes paid include the payments of advance tax prepayments and are net of tax cash refunds.

The Group establishes, utilizes and maintains various kinds of credit lines and facilities with banks and insurers. Most of these facilities are short term. These facilities are used in our day-to-day supply chain business and structured solutions activities. The amounts drawn under such facilities fluctuate with the kind and level of transactions being undertaken. As a result, management considers short-term bank borrowings to be a part of its operating activities and that it is most appropriate to include the changes in short-term bank borrowings within operating activities in the consolidated statements of cash flows.

There are no circumstances in which cash and cash equivalents held by an entity are not available for use by the Group other than amounts presented as restricted cash.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 27. Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows – Supplemental Disclosure (continued)

Consolidated cash flows statement – reconciliation of liabilities arising from financing activities

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Debt, opening balance	\$ 43,733	\$116,813
Cash flows	—	(42,253)
Non-cash changes:		
Dispositions of subsidiaries	(45,465)	(34,996)
Accretion	94	187
Rollover of interest expenses into principal	286	—
Cumulative transaction adjustments	<u>1,352</u>	<u>3,982</u>
Debt, ending balance	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 43,733</u>

Non-cash transactions

Non-cash transactions during the year ended December 31, 2018: (1) a non-cash settlement loss of \$5,600 which represented the carrying amounts of assets that the Group contributed under a court-approved settlement agreement (see Note 21); and (2) the deconsolidation of a subsidiary resulting in recognition of a long-term non-interest bearing loan payable of \$3,645 (see Note 31).

Non-cash transactions during the year ended December 31, 2017: (1) sale of the shares of a non-core Latin America focused commodities trading subsidiary to a company controlled by the former President of the Company (see Note 28); (2) disposition of subsidiaries (see Note 31); (3) offsetting of a payable of \$12,264 due to a former subsidiary against a receivable due from the same entity; (4) redemption of preferred shares of \$52,299 in a subsidiary held by the former subsidiary in an exchange of trade receivables with a fair value of \$52,299; and (5) offsetting of long-term deposit liabilities of \$545 against finance lease receivables.

Non-cash transactions during the year ended December 31, 2016: (1) purchase of certain undeveloped lands from a former subsidiary for \$790 at their fair value in exchange for a reduction of the Group's loan receivables due from the former subsidiary; and (2) settlement of a trade receivable of \$1,343 by the customer undertaking to deliver physical commodity goods of equal value to the Group in the future.

Note 28. Related Party Transactions

In the normal course of operations, the Group enters into transactions with related parties, which include affiliates in which the Group has a significant equity interest (10% or more) or has the ability to influence their operating and financing policies through significant shareholding, representation on the board of directors, corporate charter and/or bylaws. The related parties also include MFC Bancorp's directors, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and their close family members, as well as any person or entity which has significant influence over MFC Bancorp. In addition to transactions disclosed elsewhere in these consolidated financial statements, the Group had the following transactions with its related parties:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Dividends received	\$ 168	\$ —	\$ —

Puttable instrument financial liability

In connection with an acquisition in November 2012, the Group entered into call and put agreements with the non-controlling interest, which allowed or required the Group to acquire up to 100% of the entity. As a result of the put options (i.e. puttable instrument), the non-controlling interest was classified as a financial liability.

In April 2014, the Group entered into a share purchase agreement with the holder of the puttable instrument (the "Put Holder") whereby the Group acquired from the Put Holder his 40% equity shares in the acquired company. Upon the execution of the agreement, the puttable instrument was terminated. In

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 28. Related Party Transactions (continued)

May 2014, the Put Holder was appointed by the board of directors as the president and chief executive officer of the former holding company. The share purchase agreement was amended in June 2014 which included a contingent purchase price whereby 10,000 common shares of the former holding company would be issued to the Put Holder for each year from 2014 to 2024 if the underlying company achieves an annual net income milestone as computed under IFRS for the year.

In January 2017, in connection with its previously announced strategy to re-allocate capital and resources and exit certain products and geographies, the Group sold the shares of a non-core Latin America focused commodities trading subsidiary to a company controlled by the Put Holder. Under the transaction, the Group received total consideration of \$14,413, including 90,000 common shares of the former holding company and the release of any further obligations to issue shares in connection with a prior share purchase agreement between the parties. The Group recognized a gain of \$57 from the disposition of the subsidiary and its immediate parent company. The Put Holder resigned as the president and chief executive officer of the former holding company in March 2017 and as the director in May 2018.

Key management personnel

The Group's key management personnel comprise the members of its Board of Directors, President, Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer. The remuneration of key management personnel of the Group was as follows:

<u>Years ended December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Short-term employee benefits	\$ 1,245	\$ 1,777	\$ 2,296
Directors' fees	594	576	634
Share-based compensation	—	713	—
Total	<u>\$ 1,839</u>	<u>\$ 3,066</u>	<u>\$ 2,930</u>

The share-based compensation for the year ended December 31, 2017 comprised \$323 and \$390, respectively, on the stock options granted to directors and other key management personnel (see Note 22).

Note 29. Financial Instruments

The fair values of the Group's financial instruments as at December 31, 2018 and 2017, other than those with carrying amounts that approximate their fair values due to their short-term nature, are summarized as follows:

<u>As at December 31:</u>	<u>2018</u>		<u>2017</u>	
	<u>Carrying Amount</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Carrying Amount</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>
<u>Financial Assets:</u>				
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Equity securities	\$5,774	\$5,774	\$ 6	\$ 6
Derivative assets	209	209	246	246
<i>Fair value through other comprehensive income (or available-for-sale instruments in 2017)</i>				
Equity securities	—	—	771	771
Debt securities	6,328	6,328	5,121	5,121
<u>Financial Liabilities:</u>				
<i>Financial liabilities measured at amortized cost:</i>				
Debt	\$ —	\$ —	\$43,733	\$43,733
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Derivative liabilities	37	37	302	302
Loan payable	3,981	3,981	—	—

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

Fair value of a financial instrument represents the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction in the principal (or most advantageous) market at the measurement date under current market conditions regardless of whether that price is directly observable or estimated using a valuation technique. The price for a transaction which takes place under duress or the seller is forced to accept the price in the transaction might not represent the fair value of an asset or a liability. The best evidence of fair value is published price quotations in an active market. When the market for a financial asset or financial liability is not active, the Group establishes fair value by using a valuation technique. The valuation technique used maximizes the use of inputs observed in active markets, and minimizes the use of inputs generated by the Group. Internally generated inputs take into account factors that market participants would consider when pricing the financial instruments, such as liquidity and credit risks. Use of judgment is significantly involved in estimating fair value of financial instruments in inactive markets and actual results could materially differ from the estimates. To value longer-term transactions and transactions in less active markets for which pricing information is not generally available, unobservable inputs may be used.

The fair values of financial assets measured at FVTPL and FVTOCI are based on quoted market prices (Level 1 fair value hierarchy) or a valuation method with observable inputs (Level 2 fair value hierarchy). The carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, short-term cash deposits, short-term receivables, short-term borrowings and account payables and accrued expenses, due to their short-term nature and normal trade credit terms, approximate their fair values. The fair values of long-term debt and other long-term liabilities are determined using discounted cash flows at prevailing market rates of interest for similar instruments with similar credit ratings (Level 2 fair value hierarchy).

The fair values of derivative financial instruments are based on quoted market prices when possible; and if not available, estimates from third-party brokers. These broker estimates are corroborated with multiple sources and/or other observable market data utilizing assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability, including assumptions about risk and market liquidity (Level 2 fair value hierarchy). Inputs may be readily observable or market-corroborated.

The fair values of a loan payable are estimated using an appropriate valuation method. Inputs to the valuation technique are unobservable (Level 3 fair value hierarchy).

The afore-said measurements also applied to the financial instruments prior to 2018.

The following tables present the Group's financial instruments measured at fair value on the consolidated statements of financial position classified by level of the fair value hierarchy as at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively:

<u>As at December 31, 2018</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>	<u>Total</u>
<u>Financial Assets:</u>				
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Equity securities	\$1,773	\$4,001	\$ —	\$ 5,774
Derivative assets	—	209	—	209
<i>Fair value through other comprehensive income:</i>				
Debt securities	6,328	—	—	6,328
Total	<u>\$8,101</u>	<u>\$4,210</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$12,311</u>
<u>Financial Liabilities:</u>				
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Derivative liabilities	\$ —	\$ 37	\$ —	\$ 37
Loan payable	—	—	3,981	3,981
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 37</u>	<u>\$3,981</u>	<u>\$ 4,018</u>

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

As at December 31, 2018, the Group held an investment in a privately held company which was measured at FVTPL. The fair value was determined using discounted cash flows at prevailing market rates of interest for similar instruments with observable inputs (Level 2 fair value hierarchy).

As at December 31, 2018, a subsidiary of the Group has a loan payable with a former subsidiary which is non-interest bearing, is without recourse to the Group and has no fixed repayment date. The undiscounted contractual amount due out of surplus cash of the subsidiary is \$57,392 (US\$42,070) and is expected to be repaid in greater than 15 years. The fair value is determined using a discount rate for similar instruments with unobservable inputs (Level 3 fair value hierarchy), which included the sale price, demand for products, production and labour costs in the future periods. The actual repayment may be significantly different from both the carrying amount and the amount due at maturity. Sensitivity to changes in the discount rate is included under “Interest Rate Risk” in this Note 29.

<u>As at December 31, 2017</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>	<u>Total</u>
<u>Financial Assets:</u>				
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Short-term securities	\$ 6	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 6
Derivative assets	—	246	—	246
<i>Available-for-sale:</i>				
Equity securities	771	—	—	771
Debt securities	5,121	—	—	5,121
Total	<u>\$ 5,898</u>	<u>\$ 246</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 6,144</u>
<u>Financial Liabilities:</u>				
<i>Fair value through profit or loss:</i>				
Derivative liabilities	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 302</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 302</u>

Generally, management of the Group believes that current financial assets and financial liabilities, due to their short-term nature, do not pose significant financial risks. The Group uses various financial instruments to manage its exposure to various financial risks. The policies for controlling the risks associated with financial instruments include, but are not limited to, standardized company procedures and policies on matters such as hedging of risk exposure, avoidance of undue concentration of risk and requirements for collateral (including letters of credit and bank guarantees) to mitigate credit risk. The Group has risk managers and other personnel to perform checking functions and risk assessments so as to ensure that the Group’s procedures and policies are complied with.

Many of the Group’s strategies, including the use of derivative instruments and the types of derivative instruments selected by the Group, are based on historical trading patterns and correlations and the Group’s management’s expectations of future events. However, these strategies may not be fully effective in all market environments or against all types of risks. Unexpected market developments may affect the Group’s risk management strategies during the period, and unanticipated developments could impact the Group’s risk management strategies in the future. If any of the variety of instruments and strategies the Group utilizes is not effective, the Group may incur losses.

The Group does not trade in financial instruments, including derivative financial instruments, for speculative purposes.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

The nature of the risks that the Group's financial instruments are subject to as at December 31, 2018 is set out in the following table:

Financial instrument	Risks				
	Credit	Liquidity	Market risks		
			Currency	Interest rate	Other price
Cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash	X		X	X	
Equity securities			X		X
Debt securities	X			X	X
Derivative securities and financial liabilities	X	X	X		X
Receivables	X		X		
Short-term bank borrowings		X	X		
Account payables and accrued expenses		X	X		
Loan payable				X	

A sensitivity analysis for each type of market risk to which the Group is exposed on its financial instruments at the end of the reporting period is provided, showing how profit or loss and equity would have been affected by changes in the relevant risk variable that were reasonably possible at that date. These ranges of parameters are estimated by management, which are based on the facts and circumstances available at the time estimates are made, and an assumption of stable socio-economic and geopolitical states. No unusual nor exceptional events, for example, natural disasters or human-made crises and calamities, are taken into consideration when the sensitivity analysis is prepared. Actual occurrence could differ from these assumptions and such differences could be material.

Credit risk

Credit risk is the risk that one party to a financial instrument will cause a financial loss for the other party by failing to discharge an obligation. Financial instruments which potentially subject the Group to credit risk consist of cash and cash equivalents, short-term cash deposits, derivative financial instruments, receivables and committed transactions (including loan commitments and financial guarantee contracts). The Group has deposited cash and cash equivalents and short-term cash deposits and entered into derivative financial instrument contracts with reputable financial institutions with high credit ratings and management believes the risk of loss from these counterparties to be remote.

Most of the Group's credit exposure is with counterparties in the merchant banking segment and are subject to normal industry credit risk. The Group has receivables from various entities and credit risk from trade receivables is mitigated since they are credit insured, covered by letters of credit, bank guarantees and/or other credit enhancements. The Group routinely monitors credit risk exposure, including sector, geographic and corporate concentrations of credit and set and regularly review counterparties' credit limits based on rating agency credit ratings and/or internal assessments of the customers and industry analysis. The Group also uses factoring and credit insurances to manage credit risk. Management believes that these measures minimize the Group's overall credit risk; however, there can be no assurance that these processes will protect the Group against all losses from non-performance.

The Group measures the loss allowance for a financial instrument at an amount equal to the lifetime expected credit losses or 12-month expected credit losses (see Note 2B(vi)).

At each reporting date, the Group assesses whether the credit risk on a financial instrument has increased significantly since initial recognition. When making the assessment, the Group uses the change in the risk of a default occurring over the expected life of the financial instrument instead of the change in the amount of expected credit losses. To make that assessment, the Group compares the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the reporting date with the risk of a default occurring on the financial instrument as at the date of initial recognition and considers reasonable and supportable

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

information, that is available without undue cost or effort, that is indicative of significant increases in credit risk since initial recognition. The Group assumes that the credit risk on a financial instrument has not increased significantly since initial recognition if the financial instrument is determined to have low credit risk at the reporting date.

Under IFRS 9, there is a rebuttable presumption that the credit risk on a financial asset has increased significantly since initial recognition when contractual payments are more than 30 days past due; although, this rebuttable presumption is not an absolute indicator that lifetime expected credit losses should be recognized, but is presumed to be the latest point at which lifetime expected credit losses should be recognized even when using forward-looking information (including macroeconomic factors on a portfolio level).

The credit risk on a financial instrument is considered low if the financial instrument has a low risk of default, the borrower has a strong capacity to meet its contractual cash flow obligations in the near term and adverse changes in economic and business conditions in the longer term may, but will not necessarily, reduce the ability of the borrower to fulfil its contractual cash flow obligations.

Financial instruments are not considered to have low credit risk when they are regarded as having a low risk of loss simply because of the value of collateral and the financial instrument without that collateral would not be considered low credit risk. Financial instruments are also not considered to have low credit risk simply because they have a lower risk of default than the Group's other financial instruments or relative to the credit risk of the jurisdiction within which the Group operates.

To determine whether a financial instrument has low credit risk, the Group may use its internal credit risk ratings or other methodologies that are consistent with a globally understood definition of low credit risk and that consider the risks and the type of financial instruments that are being assessed. Generally, an external rating of "investment grade" is an example of a financial instrument that may be considered as having low credit risk. Financial instruments are considered to have low credit risk from a market participant perspective taking into account all of the terms and conditions of the financial instrument.

A financial asset is credit-impaired when one or more events that have a detrimental impact on the estimated future cash flows of that financial asset have occurred. Evidence that a financial asset is credit-impaired include observable data about the following events: (a) significant financial difficulty of the issuer or the borrower; (b) a breach of contract, such as a default or past due event; (c) the lender(s) of the borrower, for economic or contractual reasons relating to the borrower's financial difficulty, having granted to the borrower a concession(s) that the lender(s) would not otherwise consider; (d) it is becoming probable that the borrower will enter bankruptcy or other financial reorganization; (e) the disappearance of an active market for that financial asset because of financial difficulties; or (f) the purchase or origination of a financial asset at a deep discount that reflects the incurred credit losses. It may not be possible to identify a single discrete event; instead, the combined effect of several events may have caused financial assets to become credit-impaired.

The Group adopts the presumption in IFRS 9 as its accounting policy that default does not occur later than when a financial asset is 90 days past due, unless it has reasonable and supportable information to demonstrate that a more lagging default criterion is more appropriate. The definition of default used for these purposes is applied consistently to all financial instruments unless information becomes available that demonstrates that another default definition is more appropriate for a particular financial instrument.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

The average contractual credit period for trade receivables is 30-60 days and up to 180 days for certain sales. With the use of non-recourse factoring facilities, the average cash collection period is reduced to approximately 14 days.

The maximum credit risk exposure as at December 31, 2018 is as follows:

Cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash	\$68,041
Derivative assets	209
Receivables	14,018
Amounts recognized in the consolidated statement of financial position	82,268
Guarantees (see Note 26)	—
Maximum credit risk exposure	<u>\$82,268</u>

In February 2016, certain guarantees related to a customer filing for insolvency were called and the Group met its obligations under these amounts. Since these guarantees were no longer contingent, but instead were probable, they were recognized as provisions of \$40,677 as at December 31, 2015, which were paid during the year ended December 31, 2016. During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Group received proceeds of \$39,149 from risk mitigation assets related to these guarantees, of which \$35,121 was credited to profit or loss through a recovery of credit loss and the remainder was credited to trade receivables. During 2017, a net reversal of credit loss of \$1,317 was credited to profit or loss. During 2018, the Group wrote off the remaining receivable balance and recognized a credit loss of \$21,812 (see Note 8).

In February 2018, the calling of a guarantee resulted in a provision for credit loss of \$1,502 as at December 31, 2017 (see Note 17). During the year ended December 31, 2018, the credit loss resulting from the calling of the guarantee was reduced by \$833 and was no longer outstanding as at December 31, 2018.

Please see sub-heading of “Concentration risk” in this note on credit risk concentration.

Liquidity risk

Liquidity risk is the risk that an entity will encounter difficulty in meeting obligations associated with financial liabilities that are settled by delivering cash or another financial asset. The Group requires liquidity specifically to fund capital requirements, satisfy financial obligations as they become due, and to operate its merchant banking business. The Group puts in place an actively managed production and capital expenditure budgeting process for major capital programs. The Group’s approach to managing liquidity is to ensure, as far as possible, that it always has sufficient liquidity to meet its liabilities when they fall due, under normal and stress conditions, without incurring unacceptable losses. The Group maintains an adequate level of liquidity, with a portion of its assets held in cash and cash equivalents. The Group also maintains adequate banking facilities, including factoring arrangements. It is the Group’s policy to invest cash in highly liquid, diversified money market funds or bank deposits for a period of less than three months. The Group may also invest in cash deposits with an original maturity date of more than three months so as to earn higher interest income.

Generally, trade payables are due within 90 days and other payables and accrued expenses are due within one year. All short-term bank borrowings are renewable on a yearly basis. As a result of the dispositions of certain subsidiaries during the year ended December 31, 2018, the Group did not have any bank debt outstanding as of December 31, 2018. The timing of future payments is based on the Group’s historical payment patterns and management’s interpretation of contractual arrangements. The actual cash outflows might occur significantly earlier than indicated in the payment projection or be amounts significantly different from those indicated in the payment projection.

Currency risk

Currency risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in foreign exchange rates. The Group operates internationally and is exposed to risks from changes in foreign currency exchange rates, particularly the Euro, Canadian dollar and U.S. dollar.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

Currency risk arises principally from future trading transactions, and recognized assets and liabilities. In order to reduce the Group's exposure to foreign currency risk on material contracts (including intercompany loans) denominated in foreign currencies (other than the functional currencies of the Group companies), the Group may use foreign currency forward contracts and options to protect its financial positions. As at December 31, 2018, the Group had foreign currency derivative financial instruments (foreign currency forward contracts and options) with aggregate notional amounts of \$nil (2017: \$14,766) and a net unrealized fair value gain of \$nil (2017: net gain of \$75).

The Group holds cash balances in renminbi ("RMB") in the People's Republic of China ("PRC"). The PRC imposes controls on the convertibility of RMB, the official currency of the PRC, into foreign currencies. The value of RMB is subject to changes in the central government policies and to international economic and political developments affecting supply and demand in the PRC foreign exchange trading system market. In the PRC, certain foreign exchange transactions are required by law to be transacted only by authorized financial institutions at exchange rates set by the People's Bank of China (the "PBOC").

The Group does not have any material exposure to highly inflationary foreign currencies.

Sensitivity analysis:

At December 31, 2018, if the U.S. dollar had weakened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$1,377 lower. Conversely, if the U.S. dollar had strengthened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$1,377 higher. The reason for such change is mainly due to certain U.S. dollar denominated financial instrument assets (net of liabilities) held by entities whose functional currencies were not the U.S. dollar. There would have been no material impact arising from financial instruments on other comprehensive income in either case.

At December 31, 2018, if the Euro had weakened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$6,559 higher. Conversely, if the Euro had strengthened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$6,559 lower. The reason for such change is mainly due to certain Euro denominated financial instrument liabilities (net of assets) owed by entities whose functional currencies were not the Euro. There would have been no impact arising from financial instruments on other comprehensive income in either case.

At December 31, 2018, if the Canadian dollar had weakened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$6,943, higher. Conversely, if the Canadian dollar had strengthened 10% against the Group companies' functional currencies with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$6,943 lower. The reason for such change is mainly due to certain Canadian dollar-denominated financial instrument liabilities (net of assets) owed by entities whose functional currencies were not the Canadian dollar. There would have been no impact arising from financial instruments on other comprehensive income in either case.

Interest rate risk

Interest rate risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in market interest rates. Short-term financial assets and financial liabilities are generally not exposed to significant interest rate risk because of their short-term nature. As at December 31, 2018, the Group did not have any long-term bank debt.

Sensitivity analysis:

At December 31, 2018, if benchmark interest rates (such as EURIBOR, LIBOR or prime rates) at that date had been 100 basis points (1.00%) per annum lower with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$506 lower. Conversely, if the benchmark interest rate

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

had been 100 basis points per annum higher with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$424 higher. The reason for such change is mainly due to the loan payable measured at FVTPL. There would have been no impact arising from financial instruments on the Group's other comprehensive income in either case.

Other price risk

Other price risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in market prices (other than those arising from interest rate risk or currency risk), whether those changes are caused by factors specific to the individual financial instrument or its issuer or by factors affecting all similar financial instruments traded in the market. The Group's other price risk includes equity price risk whereby the Group's investments in equities of other entities that are classified as held for trading are subject to market price fluctuations.

Sensitivity analysis:

At December 31, 2018, if equity prices in general had weakened 10% with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$416 lower. Conversely, if equity prices in general had strengthened 10% with all other variables held constant, net income for the year ended December 31, 2018 would have been \$416 higher. There would have been no impact on other comprehensive income in either case.

In addition, the Group buys and sells futures contracts on the London Metal Exchange and enters into financial derivative contracts (e.g. futures and swaps) with banks, customers and brokers. Management uses the financial derivative contracts to manage the price fluctuations for its own account or for customers. As at December 31, 2018, the Group had outstanding derivative financial instruments with an aggregate notional amount of \$9,720 (2017: \$8,690), primarily to hedge against the long position in inventories and the usage of energy, which resulted in a net unrealized fair value gain of \$172 (2017: loss \$131). As these future contracts are to hedge against the Group's physical inventory position, any change in the fair value of the future contracts will offset the change in the fair value, though in opposite direction, of the physical inventories. As a result, the sensitivity analysis of the price risk arising from the future contracts on the Group is not applicable.

Concentration risk

Management determines the concentration risk threshold amount as any single financial asset (or liability) exceeding 10% of total financial assets (or liabilities) in the Group's consolidated statement of financial position.

In the PRC, foreign exchange transactions are required by law to be transacted only by authorized financial institutions at exchange rates set by the PBOC. Remittances in currencies other than RMB by the Group in the PRC must be processed through the PBOC or other PRC foreign exchange regulatory bodies and require certain supporting documentation in order to effect the remittance. If such foreign exchange control system prevents the Group from obtaining sufficient foreign currencies to satisfy its currency demands, the Group may not be able to pay dividends in foreign currencies and the Group's ability to fund its business activities that are conducted in foreign currencies could be adversely affected.

Except as disclosed in the preceding paragraph, at December 31, 2018, there were no customer, company or entity holding financial assets or liabilities exceeding the threshold amounts.

Additional disclosure

In addition to information disclosed elsewhere in these consolidated financial statements, the Group had significant items of income, expense, and gains and losses resulting from financial assets and financial liabilities which were included in profit or loss for the years ended December 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 as follows:

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 29. Financial Instruments (continued)

	2018	2017	2016
Interest income on financial assets not at FVTPL	\$ 15	\$ 434	\$ 605
Interest income on financial assets classified at FVTPL	661	539	2,451
Total interest income	<u>\$ 676</u>	<u>\$ 973</u>	<u>\$ 3,056</u>
Interest expense on financial liabilities not at FVTPL	\$ 989	\$ 3,509	\$ 7,747
Interest expense on financial liabilities classified at FVTPL	680	1,195	7,720
Total interest expense	<u>\$ 1,669</u>	<u>\$ 4,704</u>	<u>\$ 15,467</u>
Dividend income on financial assets at FVTPL	\$ 168	\$ —	\$ —
Dividend income on financial assets classified not at FVTPL	—	—	6
Net gain on financial assets at FVTPL	3,785	6,825	1,240
Loss on loan payable at FVTPL	(167)	—	—
Reversal of impairment on securities measured at FVTOCI	(3)	—	—

Note 30. Fair Value Disclosure for Non-financial Assets

The fair values of the Group's financial instrument assets and liabilities which are measured at fair value on the consolidated statements of financial position are discussed in Note 29. The following tables present non-financial assets which are measured at or based on fair value in the consolidated statements of financial position, classified by level of the fair value hierarchy:

Assets measured at fair value on a recurring basis as at December 31, 2018:

	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Inventories	\$ 2,238	\$ —	\$ —
Investment property	—	—	37,804
Total	<u>\$ 2,238</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 37,804</u>

Assets measured at fair value on a recurring basis as at December 31, 2017:

	Level 1	Level 2 (Restated)	Level 3 (Restated)
Inventories	\$ 1,039	\$ 271	\$ —
Investment property	—	—	37,660
Total	<u>\$ 1,039</u>	<u>\$ 271</u>	<u>\$ 37,660</u>

Commodity inventories are measured at fair value less costs to sell. The fair values are determined by reference to their contractual selling prices or quoted prices in marketplaces in the absence of a contract (level 1 fair value hierarchy). An average of past sale prices is used when there are no observable market prices or current contracts but there have been recent past sales of such goods and there are no indications that the market prices have been materially impacted (level 2 fair value hierarchy).

The fair values of investment property are measured using an income approach which includes the following inputs: land value, realized basic rents, operating costs, discount rates and damages and defects (level 3 fair value hierarchy). The valuation approach was consistent for both 2018 and 2017. Both the 2018 and 2017 valuations were performed by an independent external valuator who is an authorized expert for the valuation of developed and undeveloped land in Germany and holds recognized and relevant professional qualifications and has recent experience in the location and category of the investment property being valued.

Note 31. MFC Bancorp and its Significant Subsidiaries

MFC Bancorp, through a subsidiary, has an office at Unit 803, Dina House, Ruttonjee Centre, 11 Duddell Street, Hong Kong SAR, China.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 31. MFC Bancorp and its Significant Subsidiaries (continued)

A subsidiary is an entity that is controlled by MFC Bancorp. The following table shows the Company's direct and indirect significant subsidiaries as at December 31, 2018. The table excludes subsidiaries which only hold intercompany assets and liabilities and do not have an active business as well as subsidiaries whose results and net assets did not materially impact the consolidated results and net assets of the Group.

<u>Subsidiaries</u>	<u>Country of Incorporation</u>	<u>Proportion of Voting Interest</u>
MFC (A) Ltd	Marshall Islands	100%
MFC (D) Ltd	Marshall Islands	100%
Brock Metals s.r.o.	Slovakia	100%
1178936 B.C. Ltd.	Canada	100%

As at December 31, 2018, the Group controlled entities in which the Group held more than 50% of the voting rights and did not control any entities in which the Group held 50% or less of the voting rights. The Group's proportional voting interests in the subsidiaries are identical to its proportional beneficial interests, except for: MFC (A) Ltd. and MFC (D) Ltd., in each of which the Group holds a 99.72% proportional beneficial interest. In addition, the Group consolidated a structured entity as at December 31, 2018.

As at December 31, 2018, none of the non-controlling interests are material to the Group. As at December 31, 2018, there were no significant restrictions (statutory, contractual and regulatory restrictions, including protective rights of non-controlling interests) on MFC Bancorp's ability to access or use the assets and settle the liabilities of the Group except for amounts presented as restricted cash.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Group completed merchant banking transactions which resulted in (i) recognition of a pre-tax gain of \$25,740; (ii) recognition of deferred tax expense of \$7,204; (iii) reclassification of cumulative translation loss of \$672 from accumulated other comprehensive income to profit or loss; (iv) recognition of a long-term liability of \$3,645; (v) recognition of non-controlling interests of \$6,441 in another subsidiary and (vi) a debit adjustment of \$6,284 to deficit under equity. In aggregate, the Group recognized total gains of \$25,771 on the deconsolidation of subsidiaries during the year ended December 31, 2018, being the amount of net liabilities at the times of dispositions, and total consideration of \$nil. Such gains were included in costs of sales and services in the Group's consolidated statement of operations.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, two subsidiaries, pursuant to the terms of respective option deeds (see Note 26), issued shares to the non-controlling interests. These share issuances were accounted for as equity transactions and were credited to non-controlling interests directly. As of December 31, 2018, such rights had been exercised in respect of less than 0.5% of the ownership of each such subsidiary, respectively.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Group sold the shares of a non-core Latin America focused commodities trading subsidiary, resulting in a gain of \$57 (see Note 28). The Group also disposed of several other subsidiaries which resulted in a net loss of \$10,276, which were included in the consolidated statement of operations.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Group disposed of several merchant banking subsidiaries resulting in a gain of \$3,590. The Group also recognized a total loss of \$1,005 on the dispositions of other merchant banking subsidiaries. These gain and losses on the dispositions of the subsidiaries were included in the consolidated statement of operations.

Note 32. Subsequent Events

The Company has scheduled a meeting of the holders of its common shares on May 31, 2019, to consider and approve: (i) the change of the Company's name to "Scully Limited"; and (ii) a consolidation of its common shares on a 25 for 1 basis, and subsequent forward split of such shares on a 1 for 25 basis. Subject to receipt of requisite shareholder approval at the scheduled meeting, the Company currently expects that such actions will be completed on or about June 3, 2019.

MFC BANCORP LTD.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016

Note 33. Approval of Consolidated Financial Statements

These consolidated financial statements were approved by the Board of Directors and authorized for issue on April 29, 2019.

ITEM 19: EXHIBITS

Exhibits Required by Form 20-F

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description</u>
1.1	Amended and Restated Memorandum and Articles of Association adopted on July 12, 2017. Incorporated by reference from our Form 6-K dated July 14, 2017.
4.1	2017 Equity Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2017 dated April 10, 2018.
4.2	Amended and Restated Arrangement Agreement dated June 7, 2017 among MFC Bancorp Ltd., MFC Bancorp Ltd. and MFC 2017 II Ltd. Incorporated by reference from our Form 6-K dated June 14, 2017.
8.1	List of significant subsidiaries of MFC Bancorp Ltd. as at December 31, 2018.
11.1	Code of Business Conduct and Ethics and Insider Trading Policy. Incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2017 dated April 10, 2018.
12.1	Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
12.2	Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
13.1	Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
13.2	Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
16.1	Letter from MSR Partners LLP (formerly Moore Stephens LLP) to the Securities and Exchange Commission dated April 30, 2019.
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document.
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document.
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Document.
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Document.
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document.
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document.

SIGNATURES

The registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this annual report on its behalf.

Date: April 30, 2019

MFC BANCORP LTD.

/s/ Michael J. Smith

Michael J. Smith

President and Chief Executive Officer